



Western Michigan University  
ScholarWorks at WMU

---

Dissertations

Graduate College

---

4-2020

## Extremal Problems on Induced Graph Colorings

James Hallas

Western Michigan University, hallas\_jr@gmail.com

Follow this and additional works at: <https://scholarworks.wmich.edu/dissertations>



Part of the Discrete Mathematics and Combinatorics Commons

---

### Recommended Citation

Hallas, James, "Extremal Problems on Induced Graph Colorings" (2020). *Dissertations*. 3611.

<https://scholarworks.wmich.edu/dissertations/3611>

This Dissertation-Open Access is brought to you for free and open access by the Graduate College at ScholarWorks at WMU. It has been accepted for inclusion in Dissertations by an authorized administrator of ScholarWorks at WMU. For more information, please contact [wmu-scholarworks@wmich.edu](mailto:wmu-scholarworks@wmich.edu).



# Extremal Problems On Induced Graph Colorings

by

**James Hallas**

A dissertation submitted to the Graduate College  
in partial fulfillment for the requirements  
for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy  
Mathematics  
Western Michigan University  
April 2020

Doctoral Committee:

Ping Zhang, Ph.D., Chair  
Patrick Bennett, Ph.D.  
Gary Chartrand, Ph.D.  
Dinesh Sarvate, Ph.D.

© 2020 James Hallas

# Extremal Problems On Induced Graph Colorings

James Hallas, Ph.D.

Western Michigan University, 2020

Graph coloring is one of the most popular areas of graph theory, no doubt due to its many fascinating problems and applications to modern society, as well as the sheer mathematical beauty of the subject. As far back as 1880, in an attempt to solve the famous Four Color Problem, there have been numerous examples of certain types of graph colorings that have generated other graph colorings of interest. These types of colorings only gained momentum a century later, however, when in the 1980s, edge colorings were studied that led to vertex colorings of various types, led by the introduction of the irregularity strength of a graph by Chartrand and the majestic chromatic index of a graph by Harary and Plantholt. Since then, the study of such graph colorings has become a popular area of research in graph theory. Recently, two set and number theoretic graph colorings were introduced, namely royal colorings and rainbow mean colorings. These two colorings as well as variations have extended some classical graph coloring concepts. We investigate structural and extremal problems dealing with royal and rainbow mean colorings and explore relationships among the chromatic parameters resulting from these colorings and traditional chromatic parameters.

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

First and foremost, I wish to thank my dissertation advisor Professor Ping Zhang for the astonishing amount of time and energy she has devoted to helping me grow as a mathematician. Having the opportunity to work with her throughout my entire academic career has been one of the most enriching experiences of my life and I will be forever grateful to her for all the advice and support she has contributed to my academic, professional, and personal endeavors. I plan to continue striving towards the high level of research excellence and student support that she exemplifies.

My gratitude also goes out to all of my committee members. I want to thank Professor Gary Chartrand for his valuable insights and suggestions related to the research topics I studied. His feedback was crucial in helping me to refine my dissertation. In addition, I am grateful to Professor Patrick Bennett and Professor Dinesh Sarvate for the ideas, suggestions, and encouragement they provided me while working on my dissertation.

I am indebted to the Department of Mathematics at Western Michigan University for its continued support throughout my graduate studies. In particular, I want to thank all the faculty members who have helped me to explore the many unique and fascinating branches of mathematics and also those who contributed to my development as a mathematics educator. I am also grateful to my fellow graduate students for the community, encouragement, and solidarity they provided during my studies as well as the greater WMU community which I am fortunate to be apart of.

Lastly, I am lucky to have a wonderful family that has supported me throughout my education. My mom, dad, brother, and the rest of my friends and family continue to help me strive towards being the best version of myself. For that, I am grateful.

James Hallas

# Table of Contents

|  |           |
|--|-----------|
| <b>ACKNOWLEDGMENTS</b>                                   | <b>ii</b> |
| <b>LIST OF FIGURES</b>                                   | <b>iv</b> |
| <b>1 Introduction</b>                                    | <b>1</b>  |
| 1.1 Graph Colorings . . . . .                            | 1         |
| 1.2 Set-Defined Colorings . . . . .                      | 3         |
| 1.3 Sum-Defined Colorings . . . . .                      | 4         |
| <b>2 Royal Colorings</b>                                 | <b>6</b>  |
| 2.1 Introduction . . . . .                               | 6         |
| 2.2 Motivation . . . . .                                 | 8         |
| 2.3 The Royal Index of a Graph . . . . .                 | 9         |
| 2.4 Strong Royal Colorings of Trees . . . . .            | 12        |
| <b>3 Royal-Zero &amp; Royal-One Graphs</b>               | <b>29</b> |
| 3.1 Introduction . . . . .                               | 29        |
| 3.2 Some Well-Known Classes of Graphs . . . . .          | 30        |
| 3.3 Conditions for Royal-One Graphs . . . . .            | 40        |
| 3.4 Open Questions . . . . .                             | 44        |
| <b>4 Rainbow Mean Colorings I</b>                        | <b>45</b> |
| 4.1 Introduction . . . . .                               | 45        |
| 4.2 Rainbow Mean Index . . . . .                         | 46        |
| 4.3 The Rainbow Mean Index of Paths and Cycles . . . . . | 49        |
| 4.4 The Rainbow Mean Index of Complete Graphs . . . . .  | 55        |
| 4.5 The Rainbow Mean Index of Stars . . . . .            | 65        |

Table of Contents - Continued

|          |   |            |
|----------|---|------------|
| <b>5</b> | <b>Rainbow Mean Colorings II</b>                            | <b>68</b>  |
| 5.1      | Introduction . . . . .                                      | 68         |
| 5.2      | Prisms, Hypercubes, and Complete Bipartite Graphs . . . . . | 70         |
| 5.3      | Star-Related Trees . . . . .                                | 76         |
| 5.3.1    | Cubic Caterpillars . . . . .                                | 77         |
| 5.3.2    | Subdivided Stars . . . . .                                  | 79         |
| 5.3.3    | Double Stars . . . . .                                      | 81         |
| <b>6</b> | <b>Proper Mean Colorings</b>                                | <b>93</b>  |
| 6.1      | Introduction . . . . .                                      | 93         |
| 6.2      | The Proper Mean Index of Some Well-Known Graphs . . . . .   | 95         |
| 6.3      | Trees . . . . .   | 102        |
|          | <b>BIBLIOGRAPHY</b>   | <b>115</b> |

## List of Figures

|      |  |    |
|------|--|----|
| 2.1  | A graph $G$ with $\text{roy}(G) = 2$ , $\text{sroy}(G) = 3$ , and $\text{smaj}(G) = 4$ . . . . .                       | 10 |
| 2.2  | Strong royal 3-edge colorings of connected graphs of order 4 . . . . .   | 12 |
| 2.3  | Strong royal 3-edge colorings of $P_n$ for $4 \leq n \leq 7$ . . . . .   | 14 |
| 2.4  | Constructing strong royal 4-edge colorings of $P_8$ and $P_9$ . . . . .  | 15 |
| 2.5  | Constructing strong royal 5-edge colorings of $P_{16}$ and $P_{17}$ . . . . .  | 16 |
| 2.6  | Strong royal 3-edge colorings of trees of order 7 . . . . .  | 17 |
| 2.7  | Strong royal 4-edge colorings of two double stars of order 15 . . . . .  | 19 |
| 2.8  | The graph $G_3$ of order $7 = 2^3 - 1$ . . . . .   | 19 |
| 2.9  | Three subgraphs of $G_3$ isomorphic to $T$ . . . . .   | 20 |
| 2.10 | Strong royal 4-edge colorings of two caterpillars of order 15 and<br>diameter 4 in Case 1 . . . . .                    | 22 |
| 2.11 | A strong royal 4-edge coloring of a caterpillar of order 15 and diam-<br>eter 4 in Subcase 2.1 . . . . .               | 23 |
| 2.12 | Strong royal 4-edge colorings of two caterpillars of order 15 and<br>diameter 4 in Subcase 2.2 . . . . .               | 24 |
| 2.13 | Illustrating strong royal edge colorings of caterpillars of order $2^k - 1$<br>for $k = 4, 5$ in Subcase 3.1 . . . . . | 26 |
| 3.1  | Strong royal colorings of $C_n$ where $3 \leq n \leq 7$ . . . . .  | 31 |
| 3.2  | Strong royal 4-edge colorings of $C_n$ for $n = 8, 10, 12$ . . . . .   | 31 |
| 3.3  | Strong royal $(k - 1)$ -edge colorings of $P_r$ for $7 \leq r \leq 15$ . . . . .                                       | 32 |
| 3.4  | Constructing a strong royal 4-edge coloring of $C_{14}$ . . . . .  | 32 |
| 3.5  | Strong royal 4-edge colorings of $C_n$ for $n = 9, 11, 13$ . . . . .   | 33 |
| 3.6  | Constructing a strong royal 4-edge coloring of $C_{15}$ . . . . .  | 34 |
| 3.7  | Constructing strong royal colorings of the cubic caterpillars . . . . .  | 37 |
| 3.8  | A strong royal 4-edge coloring of $\text{cor}(C_7)$ . . . . .  | 38 |
| 3.9  | A strong royal 4-edge coloring of $C_7 \square K_2$ . . . . .  | 39 |

List of Figures - Continued

|      |   |    |
|------|---|----|
| 3.10 | The graph $G_3$ of order $7 = 2^3 - 1$ and size $m_3 = 15$ . . . . .                          | 40 |
| 3.11 | Subgraphs of $G_3$ . . . . .  | 41 |
| 3.12 | Showing that $\text{sroy}(C_7 + e) = 3$ for each $e \notin E(C_7)$ . . . . .                  | 42 |
| 4.1  | A rainbow mean coloring of $P_4$ . . . . .  | 50 |
| 4.2  | Rainbow mean colorings of $P_3, P_5,$ and $P_7$ . . . . .                                     | 50 |
| 4.3  | Rainbow mean colorings of $P_6$ and $P_8$ . . . . .   | 51 |
| 4.4  | The construction of the rainbow mean coloring $c_{10}$ of $P_{10}$ in Case 1                  | 51 |
| 4.5  | The construction of the a rainbow mean coloring $c_{12}$ of $P_{12}$ in Case 2                | 52 |
| 4.6  | Rainbow mean colorings of $C_4, C_8,$ and $C_{12}$ . . . . .                                  | 53 |
| 4.7  | Rainbow mean colorings of $C_5, C_9,$ and $C_{13}$ . . . . .                                  | 53 |
| 4.8  | A rainbow mean coloring of $C_{18}$ . . . . .   | 55 |
| 4.9  | Rainbow mean colorings of $C_7$ and $C_{11}$ . . . . .  | 56 |
| 4.10 | Rainbow mean colorings of $K_4$ and $K_8$ . . . . .   | 58 |
| 4.11 | Rainbow mean colorings of $K_5$ and $K_9$ . . . . .   | 60 |
| 4.12 | A rainbow mean coloring of $K_7$ . . . . .  | 62 |
| 4.13 | A rainbow mean coloring of $K_6$ . . . . .  | 65 |
| 5.1  | A rainbow mean coloring of the Petersen graph $P$ . . . . .                                   | 69 |
| 5.2  | The prisms $C_3 \square K_2$ and $C_4 \square K_2$ . . . . .                                  | 70 |
| 5.3  | Rainbow mean colorings of $C_4 \square K_2$ and $C_6 \square K_2$ . . . . .                   | 71 |
| 5.4  | Rainbow mean colorings of $C_3 \square K_2$ and $C_5 \square K_2$ . . . . .                   | 72 |
| 5.5  | Constructing a rainbow mean coloring of $Q_4$ from a rainbow mean coloring of $Q_3$ . . . . . | 74 |
| 5.6  | Rainbow mean colorings of $K_{4,6}$ and $K_{4,7}$ . . . . .                                   | 76 |
| 5.7  | A rainbow mean coloring of $T_{16}$ . . . . .   | 78 |
| 5.8  | A rainbow mean coloring of $T_{18}$ . . . . .   | 79 |
| 5.9  | A rainbow mean coloring of $S(K_{1,8})$ . . . . .   | 80 |
| 5.10 | A rainbow mean coloring of $S(K_{1,9})$ . . . . .   | 81 |
| 5.11 | The double star $S_{a,b}$ of order $a + b$ where $a, b \geq 2$ . . . . .                      | 82 |
| 5.12 | A rainbow mean coloring of $S_{8,8}$ . . . . .  | 83 |
| 5.13 | A rainbow mean coloring of $S_{9,9}$ . . . . .  | 83 |
| 5.14 | A rainbow mean coloring of $S_{4j+1,4k+1}$ . . . . .  | 85 |

List of Figures - Continued

|      |   |     |
|------|---|-----|
| 5.15 | A rainbow mean coloring of $S_{4j+3,4k+3}$ . . . . .                | 85  |
| 5.16 | A rainbow mean coloring of $S_{2j,2k}$ where $j < k$ . . . . .      | 86  |
| 5.17 | A rainbow mean coloring of $S_{2j+1,2k}$ where $j < k$ . . . . .    | 87  |
| 5.18 | A rainbow mean coloring of $S_{2j,2k+1}$ where $j \leq k$ . . . . . | 87  |
| 6.1  | Proper mean colorings of $C_5$ and $C_6$ . . . . .                  | 94  |
| 6.2  | Proper mean colorings of $P_n$ for $n = 3, 5, 7$ . . . . .          | 96  |
| 6.3  | Proper mean colorings of $P_n$ for $n = 4, 6, 8$ . . . . .          | 98  |
| 6.4  | Proper mean colorings of $C_5$ and $C_9$ . . . . .                  | 99  |
| 6.5  | A proper mean coloring of $C_{10}$ . . . . .                        | 99  |
| 6.6  | A proper mean coloring of $C_{11}$ . . . . .                        | 100 |
| 6.7  | Proper mean colorings of $T'$ and $T''$ . . . . .                   | 110 |
| 6.8  | Proper mean colorings of $T_i$ for $1 \leq i \leq 7$ . . . . .      | 111 |

# Chapter 1

## Introduction

### 1.1 Graph Colorings

On October 23, 1852, a problem was stated that immeasurably changed the field of graph theory. A young mathematician named Francis Guthrie posed the following question. Using at most four colors, can the regions of a map be colored so that no two regions sharing a boundary are colored the same? This deceptively simple sounding question stumped problem solvers from a variety of different backgrounds for over a century. It wasn't until 1976 when Kenneth Appel and Wolfgang Haken finally found a solution to this problem, which was initially controversial due to its reliance on computer technology. Nevertheless they showed that the answer is affirmative, namely that any map can indeed be colored in the desired way using at most four colors. This famous question led to the development of a branch of graph theory focused on the study of *graph colorings*. Today, graph coloring is one of the most popular areas of graph theory because of its history as well as its many fascinating problems and applications to modern society.

A *k-edge coloring* of a graph  $G$  is a function  $c : E(G) \rightarrow [k] = \{1, 2, \dots, k\}$  where  $k$  is a positive integer. The edge coloring  $c$  is *unrestricted* if no condition is placed on how the edges may be colored. For example, in an unrestricted edge coloring, adjacent edges may be colored the same. However, if no pair of adjacent edges in  $G$  can be colored the same, then  $c$  is referred to as a *proper edge coloring*. The minimum positive integer  $k$  for which  $G$  has a proper  $k$ -edge coloring is its *chromatic index*, denoted by  $\chi'(G)$ . For every nonempty graph  $G$ ,  $\chi'(G) \geq \Delta(G)$ , where  $\Delta(G)$  is the maximum degree of  $G$ .

The most famous theorem dealing with the chromatic index was obtained by Vizing in [43].

**Theorem 1.1.1 (Vizing's Theorem)** *For every nonempty graph  $G$ ,*

$$\chi'(G) \leq \Delta(G) + 1.$$

As a result of Vizing's theorem, the chromatic index of a nonempty graph  $G$  is one of two numbers, namely either  $\Delta(G)$  or  $\Delta(G) + 1$ . A graph  $G$  with  $\chi'(G) = \Delta(G)$  is called a *class one graph* while a graph  $G$  with  $\chi'(G) = \Delta(G) + 1$  is called a *class two graph*.

A *vertex  $k$ -coloring* of a graph  $G$  is a function  $c' : V(G) \rightarrow [k]$  where  $k$  is a positive integer. A vertex coloring of a nontrivial graph  $G$  is *vertex-distinguishing* or *rainbow* if distinct vertices of  $G$  are assigned distinct colors while a vertex coloring of  $G$  is *neighbor-distinguishing* if no two adjacent vertices are colored the same. Such a coloring is commonly called a *proper coloring*. The minimum  $k$  for which a proper (vertex)  $k$ -coloring of a graph  $G$  exists is the chromatic number of  $G$  and is denoted by  $\chi(G)$ . Notice that every rainbow coloring is also proper, making rainbow a stronger condition to require of a graph coloring.

We refer to the book [23] for graph theory notation and terminology not described in this dissertation. The following are some well-known results about the chromatic number of a graph. For graphs of order  $n \geq 3$ , it is immediate which graphs of order  $n$  have chromatic number 1, 2, or  $n$ . A graph is *empty* if it has no edges. Consequently, a *nonempty graph* has one or more edges.

**Observation 1.1.2** *If  $G$  is a graph of order  $n \geq 3$ , then  $\chi(G) = 1$  if and only if  $G$  is empty,  $\chi(G) = n$  if and only if  $G = K_n$ , and  $\chi(G) = 2$  if and only if  $G$  is a nonempty bipartite graph.*

By Observation 1.1.2,  $\chi(G) \geq 3$  if and only if  $G$  contains an odd cycle (or equivalently  $G$  is not a bipartite graph).

**Proposition 1.1.3** *If  $H$  is a subgraph of a graph  $G$ , then  $\chi(H) \leq \chi(G)$ .*

The *clique number*  $\omega(G)$  of a graph  $G$  is the maximum order of a complete subgraph of  $G$ . In particular,  $\omega(K_n) = n$  and  $\omega(G) = 2$  for every nonempty bipartite graph  $G$ .

**Theorem 1.1.4** For every graph  $G$ ,

$$\omega(G) \leq \chi(G) \leq \Delta(G) + 1.$$

For each odd integer  $n \geq 3$ , the connected graphs  $C_n$  and  $K_n$  have the property that  $\chi(C_n) = 3 = \Delta(C_n) + 1$  and  $\chi(K_n) = n = \Delta(K_n) + 1$ . Brooks [9] showed that these two classes of graphs are the only connected graphs with this property.

**Theorem 1.1.5 (Brooks' Theorem)** If  $G$  is a connected graph that is neither an odd cycle nor a complete graph, then

$$\chi(G) \leq \Delta(G).$$

During the past several decades, there have been many studies of edge labelings or edge colorings of graphs that give rise to vertex labelings or colorings where the vertex coloring is either proper or rainbow. Such colorings are often referred to as *color-induced graph colorings*. Among the colored-induced vertex colorings  $c'$  of a graph  $G$  obtained from an edge coloring  $c$  of  $G$ , the most studied are those for which the color  $c'(v)$  of a vertex  $v$  of  $G$  is either (1) the set of colors of those edges incident with  $v$ , (2) the multiset of colors of the edges incident with  $v$ , or (3) the sum of the colors of the edges incident with  $v$ . The induced graph colorings studied in this work belong to one of two types, namely set-defined and sum-defined colorings. We refer to the books [15, 23, 45, 46] for definitions, applications, and results relating to these topics.

## 1.2 Set-Defined Colorings

First, we consider edge colorings that lead to vertex colorings by the process described in (1). An early example of such an edge coloring was introduced by Harary and Plantholt [29] in 1985. Let  $c : E(G) \rightarrow [k]$  be an unrestricted edge coloring of a nontrivial connected graph  $G$  with  $c'(v) = \bigcup_{e \in E_v} \{c(e)\}$  for each vertex  $v$  in  $G$ , where  $E_v$  denotes the set of edges incident to  $v$ . If  $c'$  is vertex-distinguishing, then  $c$  is called a *strong majestic edge coloring* (also called a *set irregular edge coloring*) of  $G$ . The minimum positive integer  $k$  for which a graph  $G$  has a strong majestic edge coloring is the *strong majestic index* of  $G$ . (This parameter was referred to as the *point-distinguishing chromatic index* by Harary and Plantholt.)

In 2008, an edge coloring  $c$  of a connected graph  $G$  of order 3 or more leading to a vertex coloring in the same fashion was introduced by Horňák, Soták, Palmer and Woźniak [27] where again  $c : E(G) \rightarrow [k]$  is unrestricted, but the induced set vertex coloring  $c'$  need only be proper. They referred to such a coloring  $c$  as a *neighbour-distinguishing coloring* and the minimum  $k$  for such a coloring exists is called the *general neighbour-distinguishing index* of  $G$ , denoted by  $gndi(G)$ . These concepts were studied further in [7, 30], under the unified terminology *majestic edge coloring* and *majestic index*, which emphasizes the relationship between the proper and rainbow cases. The majestic index of a connected graph  $G$  of order 3 or more is denoted by  $\text{maj}(G)$ . In this work, we will use the terminology “majestic edge coloring” and “majestic index” with the notation  $\text{maj}(G)$  for this parameter of a graph  $G$ . Other concepts related to majestic edge colorings were introduced by Chartrand in 2015 [46].

While an edge coloring  $c$  of a graph  $G$  typically uses colors from the set  $[k]$  for some positive integer  $k$  resulting in  $c(e) = i$  for some  $i \in [k]$ , we might equivalently define  $c(e) = \{i\}$  as well. In this case, both the edge coloring  $c$  and the induced vertex coloring  $c'$  assign subsets of  $[k]$  to the edges and the vertices of  $G$  respectively, where the color assigned to an edge by  $c$  is a singleton subset of  $[k]$ . Looking at  $c$  in this manner suggests the idea of studying edge colorings  $c$  where both  $c$  and its induced vertex coloring  $c'$  assign nonempty subsets of  $[k]$  to the elements (edges and vertices) of a graph  $G$  such that the color assigned to an edge of  $G$  by  $c$  is not necessarily a singleton subset of  $[k]$ . This observation gives rise to two main concepts of this work; strong royal colorings and royal colorings of graphs as well as the corresponding chromatic indexes.

### 1.3 Sum-Defined Colorings

Here we consider edge colorings that give rise to vertex colorings using the process described in (3). The unrestricted edge colorings inducing sum-defined vertex colorings that have attracted the most attention are those where the vertex colorings are either vertex-distinguishing or neighbor-distinguishing. A nontrivial graph has been called *irregular* if its vertices have distinct degrees. It is well known that no graph is irregular. This observation led to the concept of *irregularity strength*, introduced by Chartrand [14] at the 250th Anniversary of Graph Theory Confer-

ence held at Indiana University-Purdue University Fort Wayne (now called Purdue University Fort Wayne) in 1986. In the past 30 years, this topic has been studied extensively by many researchers, as described in [15, 45, 46].

For a connected graph  $G$ , a *weighting*  $w$  of  $G$  is an assignment of numbers (usually positive integers) to the edges of  $G$ , where  $w(e)$  denotes the weight of an edge  $e$  of  $G$ . This then converts  $G$  into a weighted graph in which the (*weighted*) *degree* of a vertex  $v$  is defined as the sum of the weights of the edges incident with  $v$ . A weighted graph  $G$  is then *irregular* if the vertices of  $G$  have distinct (weighted) degrees. This concept can be viewed using graph coloring terminology.

Let  $G$  be a connected graph of order at least 3. An unrestricted edge coloring  $c : E(G) \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  induces a vertex coloring  $c' : V(G) \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ , where  $\mathbb{N}$  denotes the set of positive integers, defined by  $c'(v) = \sum_{e \in E_v} c(e)$  for each vertex  $v$  of  $G$ , where  $E_v$  is the set of the edges incident with  $v$  in  $G$ . Here, the induced vertex coloring  $c$  is required to be vertex-distinguishing. In this case,  $c$  is called a *vertex-distinguishing edge coloring* of  $G$ . The minimum of the largest colors used among all vertex-distinguishing edge colorings of  $G$  is called the *irregularity strength* of  $G$ . The goal was for the vertices to have distinct colors, regardless of how large the induced vertex colors may be. This observation motivates the two other primary concepts of this work, namely rainbow mean colorings and proper mean colorings of graphs as well as the corresponding chromatic indexes.

# Chapter 2

## Royal Colorings

**Abstract:** For a graph  $G$  and a positive integer  $k$ , a royal  $k$ -edge coloring of  $G$  is an assignment of nonempty subsets of the set  $\{1, 2, \dots, k\}$  to the edges of  $G$  that gives rise to a proper vertex coloring in which the color assigned to each vertex  $v$  is the union of the sets of colors of the edges incident with  $v$ . If the resulting vertex coloring is rainbow, then the edge coloring is a strong royal  $k$ -edge coloring. The minimum positive integer  $k$  for which a graph has a strong royal  $k$ -edge coloring is the strong royal index of the graph. The primary emphasis here is on strong royal colorings of trees.

### 2.1 Introduction

For a connected graph  $G$  of order 3 or more and a positive integer  $k$ , let  $c : E(G) \rightarrow [k] = \{1, 2, \dots, k\}$  be an unrestricted edge coloring of  $G$ . Again such a coloring allows adjacent edges of  $G$  to be assigned the same color. We write  $\mathcal{P}^*([k])$  for the set consisting of the  $2^k - 1$  nonempty subsets of  $[k]$ . The edge coloring  $c$  induces a vertex coloring  $c' : V(G) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}^*([k])$  where  $c'(v)$  is the set of colors of the edges incident with  $v$ . If  $c'$  is a proper vertex coloring of  $G$ , then  $c$  is a *majestic  $k$ -edge coloring* and the minimum positive integer  $k$  for which  $G$  has a majestic  $k$ -edge coloring is the *majestic index*  $\text{maj}(G)$  of  $G$ . If  $c'$  is rainbow (that is,  $c'(u) \neq c'(v)$  for every two distinct vertices  $u$  and  $v$  of  $G$ ), then  $c$  is a *strong majestic  $k$ -edge coloring* and the minimum positive integer  $k$  for which  $G$  has a strong majestic  $k$ -edge coloring is the *strong majestic index*  $\text{smaj}(G)$  of  $G$ . Majestic edge colorings were introduced by Györi, Horňák, Palmer, and Woźnick [27] under different terminology and studied further in [30, 34]. Strong

majestic edge colorings were introduced by Harary and Plantholt [29] in 1985, also using different terminology, and studied further by others (see [23, 45, 46]).

The following is an immediate observation concerning these indexes.

**Proposition 2.1.1** *Every connected graph  $G$  of size  $m \geq 2$  has a strong majestic coloring and therefore a majestic coloring. Furthermore,*

$$2 \leq \text{maj}(G) \leq \text{smaj}(G) \leq m.$$

**Proof.** For a connected graph  $G$  with  $E(G) = \{e_1, e_2, \dots, e_m\}$ , define an edge coloring  $c : E(G) \rightarrow [m]$  by  $c(e_i) = i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq m$ . Since the sets of edges incident with distinct vertices are distinct, it follows that  $c$  is a strong majestic  $m$ -edge coloring of  $G$ , producing the desired inequalities. ■

The following results were obtained by Harary and Plantholt [29] on complete graphs  $K_n$ , complete bipartite graphs  $K_{s,t}$ , paths  $P_n$ , cycles  $C_n$ , and hypercubes  $Q_n$ .

**Theorem 2.1.2** [29] *For every integer  $n \geq 3$ ,*

$$\text{smaj}(K_n) = \text{maj}(K_n) = 1 + \lceil \log_2 n \rceil.$$

**Theorem 2.1.3** [29] *For integers  $s$  and  $t$  with  $2 \leq s \leq t$ ,*

$$\text{smaj}(K_{s,t}) \leq 2 + \lceil \log_2 t \rceil.$$

*In particular,  $1 + \lceil \log_2 t \rceil \leq \text{smaj}(K_{t,t}) \leq 2 + \lceil \log_2 t \rceil$  for each integer  $t \geq 2$ .*

**Theorem 2.1.4** [29] *For each integer  $n \geq 3$ ,*

$$\begin{aligned} \text{smaj}(P_n) &= \min \left\{ 2 \left\lceil \frac{1 + \sqrt{8n-9}}{4} \right\rceil - 1, 2 \left\lceil \sqrt{\frac{n-1}{2}} \right\rceil \right\}, \\ \text{smaj}(C_n) &= \min \left\{ 2 \left\lceil \frac{1 + \sqrt{8n+1}}{4} \right\rceil - 1, 2 \left\lceil \sqrt{\frac{n}{2}} \right\rceil \right\}. \end{aligned}$$

**Theorem 2.1.5** [29] *For each integer  $n \geq 2$ ,  $\text{smaj}(Q_n) = n + 1$ .*

**Theorem 2.1.6** [29] *For each integer  $k \geq 2$ , the largest order  $M(k)$  of a tree with strong majestic index  $k$  is*

$$M(k) = \begin{cases} \frac{k^2+3k-4}{2} & \text{if } k \geq 2 \text{ and } k \neq 4 \\ 11 & \text{if } k = 4. \end{cases}$$

The following is a consequence of Theorem 2.1.6.

**Corollary 2.1.7** *If  $T$  is a tree of order  $n \geq 3$  and  $\text{sma}_j(T) \neq 4$ , then*

$$\text{sma}_j(T) \geq \left\lceil \frac{\sqrt{8n+25}-3}{2} \right\rceil.$$

**Proof.** Let  $T$  be a tree of order  $n \geq 3$  with  $\text{sma}_j(T) = k \neq 4$ . It then follows by Theorem 2.1.6 that  $n \leq \frac{k^2+3k-4}{2}$  and so  $k^2 + 3k - 2n - 4 \geq 0$ , producing the desired inequality. ■

## 2.2 Motivation

Recall in a majestic coloring  $c$  of a graph  $G$  that the edge colors are positive integers. As stated in the introduction, this concept can be generalized by allowing the edge coloring  $c$  to assign nonempty subsets of  $[k]$  for some  $k$ . The following scenario illustrates why broadening majestic colorings in this manner is advantageous.

Consider a social media platform where users can connect with one another in some way. For example, on the popular site Facebook, users can connect as “friends.” Similarly on the professional networking platform LinkedIn, users can send and accept “connection invitations.” Given a collection of users from such a site, a graph (social network) can be constructed, where the vertices of the graph are the users and two users are joined by an edge if they are connected on the site. Some sites have connection processes that are not symmetric, in which case a digraph could be used, but here we assume that the social network is a graph.

Suppose common interests between friends in a social network are being tracked. For simplicity, we will refer to two connected users as friends. Let the representative graph be connected and assume further that any pair of friends has at least

one common interest. If we create a list of interests for each user by compiling all the interests they share with at least one friend, what conditions must be met so that no two users who are friends share the same list of interests. Moreover, is it possible distinct users in the network always have distinct lists of interests? If either of the former questions can be answered in the affirmative, how many distinct interests must be tracked and how do those interests have to be distributed across the social network?

If we replace interests by positive integers, then these questions suggest studying a set-defined edge coloring of a graph that gives rise to a set-defined coloring of the vertices of the graph in a similar fashion to the majestic coloring problem. This type of coloring is the primary subject of this section.

## 2.3 The Royal Index of a Graph

In a majestic edge coloring of a graph  $G$ , the colors assigned to the edges of  $G$  are elements of some set  $[k]$  for a positive integer  $k$ , which results in a proper vertex coloring of  $G$  where the color of a vertex  $v$  is the set of colors of the edges incident with  $v$ . If the vertex coloring is rainbow, then the edge coloring is a strong majestic edge coloring of  $G$ . Here, we consider edge colorings, called royal colorings and strong royal colorings, where the colors assigned to the edges of a graph are nonempty subsets of a set  $[k]$  rather than elements of  $[k]$ .

For a connected graph  $G$  of order 3 or more, let  $c : E(G) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}^*([k])$  be an unrestricted edge coloring of  $G$  for some positive integer  $k$ . The edge coloring  $c$  produces the vertex coloring  $c' : V(G) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}^*([k])$  defined by

$$c'(v) = \bigcup_{e \in E_v} c(e),$$

where  $E_v$  is the set of edges of  $G$  incident with  $v$ . If  $c'$  is a proper vertex coloring of  $G$ , then  $c$  is called a *royal  $k$ -edge coloring* of  $G$ . An edge coloring  $c$  is a *royal coloring* of  $G$  if  $c$  is a royal  $k$ -edge coloring for some positive integer  $k$ . The minimum positive integer  $k$  for which a graph  $G$  has a royal  $k$ -edge coloring is the *royal index*  $\text{roy}(G)$  of  $G$ . If  $c'$  is rainbow, then  $c$  is a *strong royal  $k$ -edge coloring* of  $G$ . An edge coloring  $c$  is a *strong royal coloring* of  $G$  if  $c$  is a strong royal  $k$ -edge coloring for some positive integer  $k$ . The minimum positive integer  $k$  for which a

graph  $G$  has a strong royal  $k$ -edge coloring is the *strong royal index*  $\text{sroy}(G)$  of  $G$ . This concept was independently introduced and studied in [8, 17]. While no royal coloring exists for the graph  $K_2$ , such a coloring exists for every connected graph of order at least 3. Since every strong majestic edge coloring is a strong royal coloring and every majestic edge coloring is a royal coloring, the following is a consequence of Proposition 2.1.1.

**Proposition 2.3.1** *Every connected graph  $G$  of order 3 or more has a strong royal coloring and therefore a royal coloring. Furthermore,*

$$2 \leq \text{roy}(G) \leq \text{maj}(G) \leq \text{smaj}(G) \text{ and } \text{roy}(G) \leq \text{sroy}(G) \leq \text{smaj}(G).$$

If  $G$  is a connected graph of order 3, then either  $G = P_3$  or  $G = K_3$ . It is easy to see that  $\text{sroy}(P_3) = \text{smaj}(P_3) = 2$  and  $\text{sroy}(K_3) = \text{smaj}(K_3) = 3$ . Since  $|\mathcal{P}^*([2])| = 3$ , it follows that  $\text{sroy}(G) \geq 3$  for every connected graph  $G$  of order  $n \geq 4$ . This implies that  $P_3$  is the only connected graph with strong royal index 2. In what follows, we consider only connected graphs of order at least 4. For example, consider the star  $G = K_{1,4}$  of size 4. Figure 2.1 shows a royal 2-edge coloring, a strong royal 3-edge coloring, and a strong majestic 4-edge coloring of  $G$ . For simplicity, we write the set  $\{a\}$  as  $a$ ,  $\{a, b\}$  as  $ab$ , and  $\{a, b, c\}$  as  $abc$ . In fact,  $\text{roy}(G) = 2$ ,  $\text{sroy}(G) = 3$ , and  $\text{smaj}(G) = 4$  for this graph  $G$ . Thus, the values of the three parameters  $\text{roy}(G)$ ,  $\text{sroy}(G)$ , and  $\text{smaj}(G)$  can be different for a graph  $G$ . Moreover, the value of  $\text{smaj}(G) - \text{sroy}(G)$  can be arbitrarily large for a connected graph  $G$  (as we will see in Section 2.4). It can also occur that  $\text{smaj}(G) = \text{sroy}(G)$  for connected graphs  $G$  of order 4 or more.

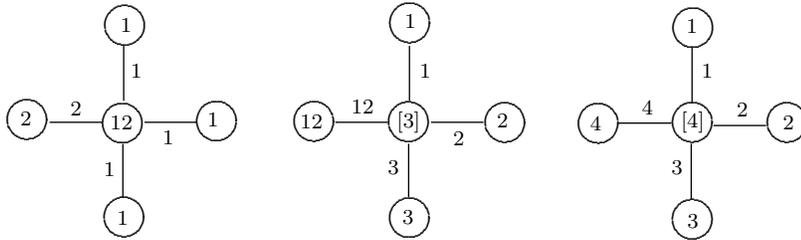


Figure 2.1: A graph  $G$  with  $\text{roy}(G) = 2$ ,  $\text{sroy}(G) = 3$ , and  $\text{smaj}(G) = 4$

**Proposition 2.3.2** *For every integer  $n \geq 4$ ,*

$$\text{sroy}(K_n) = \text{smaj}(K_n) = 1 + \lceil \log_2 n \rceil.$$

**Proof.** Since  $\text{sroy}(K_n) \leq 1 + \lceil \log_2 n \rceil$  by Theorem 2.1.2 and Proposition 2.3.1, it remains to show that  $\text{sroy}(K_n) \geq 1 + \lceil \log_2 n \rceil$ . Suppose that  $\text{sroy}(K_n) = k$  for an integer  $n \geq 4$ . Then there exists a strong royal  $k$ -edge coloring  $c : E(K_n) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}^*([k])$  of  $K_n$  such that the induced vertex coloring  $c' : V(K_n) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}^*([k])$  is rainbow; so  $c'(u) \neq c'(v)$  for every two distinct vertices  $u$  and  $v$  of  $K_n$ . However, since  $c'(u)$  and  $c'(v)$  both contain the color  $c(uv)$ , it follows that  $c'(u) \cap c'(v) \neq \emptyset$ . Thus, if  $A \subseteq [k]$  such that  $c'(x) = A$  for some vertex  $x$  of  $K_n$ , then  $c'(y) \not\subseteq \bar{A} = [k] - A$  for every vertex  $y$  of  $K_n$  distinct from  $x$ . Hence, there are at most  $2^{k-1}$  possible colors for the  $n$  vertex colors of  $K_n$ , implying that  $n \leq 2^{k-1}$  and so  $\log_2 n \leq k - 1$ . Therefore,  $\text{sroy}(K_n) = k \geq 1 + \lceil \log_2 n \rceil$  resulting in  $\text{sroy}(K_n) = 1 + \lceil \log_2 n \rceil$ . ■

There are other connected graphs  $G$  for which  $\text{smaj}(G) = \text{sroy}(G)$ . First, we present a lower bound for the strong royal index of any connected graph of order 4 or more in terms of its order.

**Proposition 2.3.3** *If  $G$  is a connected graph of order  $n \geq 4$ , then*

$$\text{sroy}(G) \geq \lceil \log_2(n+1) \rceil = 1 + \lceil \log_2 n \rceil.$$

**Proof.** Suppose that  $\text{sroy}(G) = k$  and let  $c : E(G) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}^*([k])$  be a strong royal  $k$ -edge coloring of  $G$ . Then the induced coloring  $c' : V(G) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}^*([k])$  is rainbow. Since  $c'(v) \neq \emptyset$  for each vertex  $v$  of  $G$  and  $|\mathcal{P}^*([k])| = 2^k - 1$ , it follows that  $n \leq 2^k - 1$  and so  $\text{sroy}(G) = k \geq \lceil \log_2(n+1) \rceil = 1 + \lceil \log_2 n \rceil$ . ■

For the hypercubes  $Q_n$  with  $n \geq 3$ , we have  $\text{sroy}(Q_n) \leq \text{smaj}(Q_n) = n + 1$  by Propositions 2.1.5 and 2.3.1. Since the order of  $Q_n$  is  $2^n$ , it follows by Proposition 2.3.3 that  $\text{sroy}(Q_n) \geq \lceil \log_2(2^n + 1) \rceil = n + 1$ . These observations provide the following result.

**Proposition 2.3.4** *For an integer  $n \geq 3$ ,*

$$\text{sroy}(Q_n) = \text{smaj}(Q_n) = \lceil \log_2(2^n + 1) \rceil = n + 1.$$

If  $G$  is a connected graph of order 4, then

$$G \in \{K_4, K_4 - e, (K_2 + K_1) \vee K_1, C_4, P_4, K_{1,3}\}.$$

By Proposition 2.3.3,  $\text{sroy}(G) \geq 3$ . Figure 2.2 shows a strong royal 3-edge coloring for each of these graphs. Thus,  $\text{sroy}(G) = 3 = \lceil \log_2(n + 1) \rceil$  for every connected graph  $G$  of order  $n = 4$ . Furthermore,  $\text{smaj}(G) = \text{sroy}(G) = 3$  for these six graphs  $G$ . In fact, for each integer  $n \geq 4$ , there is a connected graph  $G$  of order  $n \geq 4$  such that  $\text{sroy}(G) = \lceil \log_2(n + 1) \rceil$ , as we will see in Section 2.4.

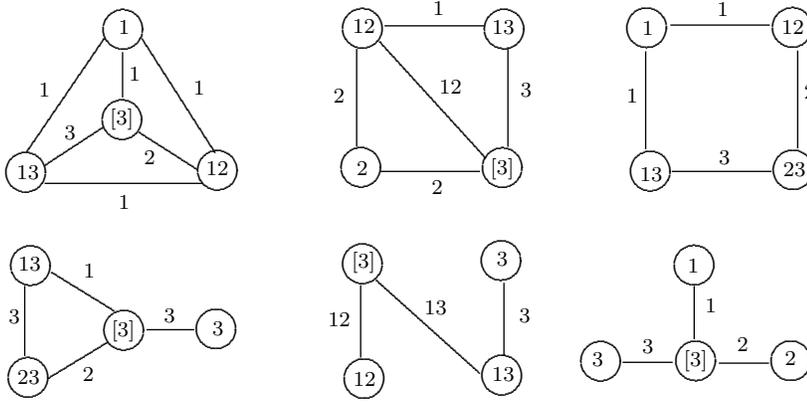


Figure 2.2: Strong royal 3-edge colorings of connected graphs of order 4

## 2.4 Strong Royal Colorings of Trees

In Proposition 2.3.3, a lower bound for the strong royal index of a connected graph  $G$  was presented in terms of its order. Next, we present an upper bound for the strong royal index of  $G$  in terms of the strong royal indexes of the connected spanning subgraphs of  $G$ . This bound shows the value of determining the strong royal indexes of trees.

**Proposition 2.4.1** *If  $G$  is a connected graph of order 3 or more, then*

$$\text{sroy}(G) \leq 1 + \min\{\text{sroy}(H) : H \text{ is a connected spanning subgraph of } G\}.$$

*In particular,*

$$\text{sroy}(G) \leq 1 + \min\{\text{sroy}(T) : T \text{ is a spanning tree of } G\}. \quad (2.1)$$

**Proof.** Among all connected spanning subgraphs of  $G$ , let  $H$  be one having the minimum strong royal index, say  $\text{sroy}(H) = k$ . Let  $c_H : E(H) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}^*([k])$  be a strong royal  $k$ -edge coloring of  $H$ . Then  $c'_H(x) \neq c'_H(y)$  for every two distinct

vertices  $x$  and  $y$  of  $H$ . We extend  $c_H$  to an edge coloring  $c_G : E(G) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}^*([k+1])$  of  $G$  by defining

$$c_G(e) = \begin{cases} c_H(e) & \text{if } e \in E(H) \\ \{k+1\} & \text{if } e \in E(G) - E(H). \end{cases}$$

Since either  $c'_G(x) = c'_H(x) \subseteq [k]$  or  $c'_G(x) = c'_H(x) \cup \{k+1\}$  for each  $x \in V(G)$  and  $c'_H$  is rainbow, it follows that  $c'_G$  is rainbow. Therefore,  $c_G$  is a strong royal  $(k+1)$ -edge coloring of  $G$  and so  $\text{sroy}(G) \leq k+1 = \text{sroy}(H) + 1$ . The inequality (2.1) follows immediately.  $\blacksquare$

As a consequence of Proposition 2.4.1, if we know the strong royal indexes of all spanning trees of a connected graph  $G$ , then we have an upper bound for  $\text{sroy}(G)$ . Consequently, we now turn to investigating the strong royal indexes of trees of order 4 or more. By Proposition 2.3.3, if  $T$  is a tree of order  $n \geq 4$ , then  $\text{sroy}(T) \geq \lceil \log_2(n+1) \rceil$ . We show that there is equality for this bound when  $T$  is either a star or a path.

**Proposition 2.4.2** *For every integer  $n \geq 4$ ,*

$$\text{sroy}(K_{1,n-1}) = \lceil \log_2(n+1) \rceil.$$

**Proof.** Let  $k = \lceil \log_2(n+1) \rceil \geq 3$  and let  $G = K_{1,n-1}$  be a star of order  $n$ , where  $V(G) = \{v, v_1, v_2, \dots, v_{n-1}\}$  and  $\deg_G v = n-1$ . By Proposition 2.3.3, it suffices to show that  $G$  has a strong royal  $k$ -edge coloring. Since  $k = \lceil \log_2(n+1) \rceil \geq 3$ , it follows that

$$2^{k-1} - 1 \leq n-1 \leq 2^k - 2.$$

Let  $S_1, S_2, \dots, S_{2^k-2}$  be the  $2^k - 2$  distinct nonempty proper subsets of  $[k]$ , where  $S_i = \{i\}$  for  $1 \leq i \leq k$ . Define the coloring  $c : E(G) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}^*([k])$  by  $c(vv_i) = S_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq n-1$ . Since  $c'(v_i) = S_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq n-1$  and  $c'(v) = [k]$ , it follows that  $c'$  is rainbow. Therefore,  $c$  is a strong royal  $k$ -edge coloring of  $G$  and so  $\text{sroy}(G) = \lceil \log_2(n+1) \rceil$ .  $\blacksquare$

For every path  $P_n$  of order  $n \geq 4$ , it was shown in [8] that there exists a strong royal coloring of  $P_n$  using colors from the set  $\mathcal{P}^*([k])$  where  $k = \lceil \log_2(n+1) \rceil$ . Here, we provide a constructive proof that describes an appropriate strong royal coloring for each path  $P_n$  of order  $n \geq 4$ .

**Theorem 2.4.3** For every integer  $n \geq 4$ ,  $\text{sroy}(P_n) = \lceil \log_2(n+1) \rceil$ .

**Proof.** Let  $k = \lceil \log_2(n+1) \rceil \geq 3$ . Then  $2^{k-1} \leq n \leq 2^k - 1$ . By Proposition 2.3.3, it suffices to show that  $G$  has a strong royal  $k$ -edge coloring. For  $4 \leq n \leq 7$ , there is a strong royal 3-edge coloring of  $P_n$  (shown in Figure 2.3) and so  $\text{sroy}(P_n) = 3 = \lceil \log_2(n+1) \rceil$ . We may assume that  $n \geq 8$ .

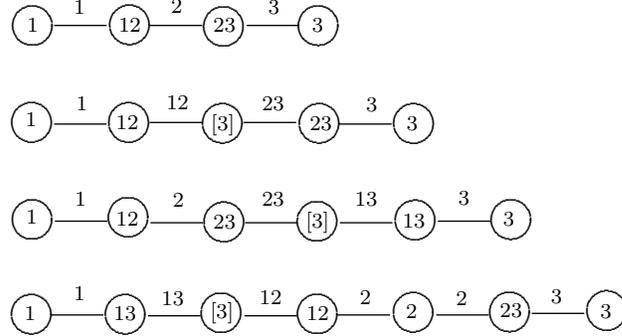


Figure 2.3: Strong royal 3-edge colorings of  $P_n$  for  $4 \leq n \leq 7$

First, we construct strong royal 4-edge colorings of  $P_8$  and  $P_9$  from a strong royal 3-edge coloring of  $P_4$  as follows. Let  $P_8$  be constructed from two copies of  $P_4$ , namely  $(u_1, u_2, u_3, u_4)$  and  $(v_1, v_2, v_3, v_4)$ , by adding the edge  $u_4v_4$  and let  $P_9$  be obtained from  $P_8$  by adding a new vertex  $v_0$  and the new edge  $v_0v_1$ . (That is,  $P_9$  is constructed from  $P_4 = (u_1, u_2, u_3, u_4)$  and  $P_5 = (v_0, v_1, v_2, v_3, v_4)$  by adding the edge  $u_4v_4$ .) Let  $c_4$  be a strong royal 3-edge coloring of  $P_4$ . Define the strong royal 4-edge coloring  $c_8 : E(P_8) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}^*([4])$  of  $P_8$  as follows:

$$c_8(e) = \begin{cases} c_4(e) & \text{if } e = u_iu_{i+1} \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq 3 \\ c_4(u_3u_4) & \text{if } e = u_4v_4 \\ c_4(u_iu_{i+1}) \cup \{4\} & \text{if } e = v_iv_{i+1} \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq 3. \end{cases}$$

Since

$$c'_8(u_i) = c'_4(u_i) \text{ and } c'_8(v_i) = c'_4(u_i) \cup \{4\}$$

for  $1 \leq i \leq 4$ , it follows that  $c'_8$  is rainbow. Thus,  $c_8$  is a strong royal 4-edge coloring of  $P_8$ . Next, we extend this strong royal 4-edge coloring  $c_8$  of  $P_8$  to a strong royal 4-edge coloring  $c_9$  by assigning  $\{4\}$  to the edge  $v_0v_1$ . Since  $c'_9(v_0) = \{4\}$  and

$c'_9(x) = c'_8(x) \neq \{4\}$  if  $x \neq v_0$ , it follows that  $c'_9$  is rainbow. Hence,  $c_9$  is a strong royal 4-edge coloring of  $P_9$ . Thus,  $\text{sroy}(P_8) = \text{sroy}(P_9) = 4$ . These two colorings are illustrated in Figure 2.4. Similarly we can construct strong royal 4-edge colorings of  $P_{2t}$  and  $P_{2t+1}$  from a strong royal 3-edge coloring of  $P_t$  for  $t = 5, 6, 7$ . It follows that if  $8 \leq n \leq 15$ , then  $\text{sroy}(P_n) = 4$ .

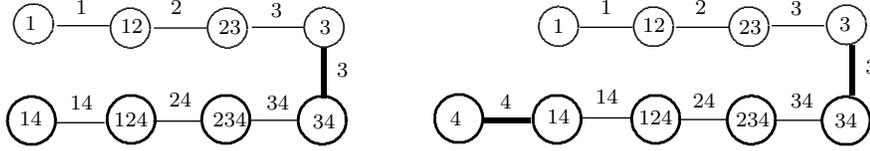


Figure 2.4: Constructing strong royal 4-edge colorings of  $P_8$  and  $P_9$

Suppose for an integer  $n \geq 8$  such that  $2^{k-1} \leq n \leq 2^k - 1$  for some integer  $k$  that  $\text{sroy}(P_n) = k$ . Let  $c_n : E(P_n) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}^*([k])$  be a strong royal  $k$ -edge coloring of  $P_n$ . Since  $2^{k-1} \leq n \leq 2^k - 1$ , it follows that  $2^k \leq 2n < 2^{k+1} - 1$  and  $2^k < 2n + 1 \leq 2^{k+1} - 1$ . Hence,  $\lceil \log_2(2n + 1) \rceil = \lceil \log_2(2n + 2) \rceil = k + 1$ . We construct strong royal  $(k + 1)$ -edge colorings of  $P_{2n}$  and  $P_{2n+1}$  from the strong royal  $k$ -edge coloring  $c_n$  of  $P_n$  as follows. Let  $P_{2n}$  be constructed from two copies of  $P_n$ , namely  $(u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n)$  and  $(v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n)$ , by adding the edge  $u_nv_n$  and let  $P_{2n+1}$  be obtained from  $P_{2n}$  by adding a new vertex  $v_0$  and joining  $v_0$  to  $v_1$  with the edge  $v_0v_1$ . Define the edge coloring  $c_{2n} : E(P_{2n}) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}^*([k + 1])$  of  $P_{2n}$  as follows:

$$c_{2n}(e) = \begin{cases} c_n(e) & \text{if } e = u_iu_{i+1} \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq n - 1 \\ c_n(u_{n-1}u_n) & \text{if } e = u_nv_n \\ c_n(u_iu_{i+1}) \cup \{k + 1\} & \text{if } e = v_iv_{i+1} \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq n - 1. \end{cases}$$

Since

$$c'_{2n}(u_i) = c'_n(u_i) \text{ and } c'_{2n}(v_i) = c'_n(u_i) \cup \{k + 1\}$$

for  $1 \leq i \leq n$ , it follows that  $c'_{2n}$  is rainbow. Thus,  $c_{2n}$  is a strong royal  $(k + 1)$ -edge coloring of  $P_{2n}$ . Next, we extend this strong royal  $(k + 1)$ -edge coloring  $c_{2n}$  of  $P_{2n}$  to a strong royal  $(k + 1)$ -edge coloring  $c_{2n+1}$  of  $P_{2n+1}$  by assigning  $\{k + 1\}$  to the edge  $v_0v_1$ . Since  $c'_{2n+1}(v_0) = \{k + 1\}$  and  $c'_{2n+1}(x) = c'_{2n}(x) \neq \{k + 1\}$  if  $x \neq v_0$ , it follows that  $c'_{2n+1}$  is rainbow. Hence,  $c_{2n+1}$  is a strong royal  $(k + 1)$ -edge coloring of  $P_{2n+1}$ . This is illustrated in Figure 2.5 for  $n = 8$  and  $k = 4$ , where a strong royal

5-edge coloring of  $P_{17}$  is constructed from a strong royal 4-edge coloring of  $P_8$ . Deleting the vertex labeled 5 from  $P_{17}$ , we obtain a strong royal 5-edge coloring of  $P_{16}$ .

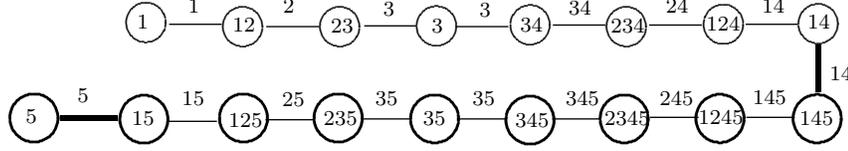


Figure 2.5: Constructing strong royal 5-edge colorings of  $P_{16}$  and  $P_{17}$

Since the desired coloring exists,  $\text{sroy}(P_n) = \lceil \log_2(n+1) \rceil$  for each integer  $n \geq 4$ . ■

By Proposition 2.3.3,  $\text{sroy}(T) \geq 3$  for a tree  $T$  of order  $n$  where  $4 \leq n \leq 7$ . In fact, the following result can be readily verified.

**Proposition 2.4.4** *If  $T$  is a tree of order  $n$  where  $4 \leq n \leq 7$ , then*

$$\text{sroy}(T) = 3.$$

Figure 2.6 shows a strong royal 3-edge coloring for each tree of order 7.

We now determine this parameter for double stars. Recall that a *double star* is a tree of diameter 3.

**Theorem 2.4.5** *If  $T$  is a double star of order  $n \geq 4$ , then*

$$\text{sroy}(T) = \lceil \log_2(n+1) \rceil.$$

**Proof.** By Proposition 2.4.4, we may assume that  $T$  is a double star of order  $n \geq 8$ . Let  $k = \lceil \log_2(n+1) \rceil \geq 4$ . Then  $2^{k-1} \leq n \leq 2^k - 1$ . By Proposition 2.3.3, it suffices to show that  $T$  has a strong royal  $k$ -edge coloring. Let  $u$  and  $v$  be the central vertices of  $T$  where  $\deg_T u = a$  and  $\deg_T v = b$ . Suppose that  $u$  is adjacent to the end-vertices  $u_1, u_2, \dots, u_{a-1}$  and  $v$  is adjacent to the end-vertices  $v_1, v_2, \dots, v_{b-1}$ . We may assume that  $2 \leq a \leq b$ . Since  $2^{k-1} \leq n = a + b \leq 2^k - 1$ ,  $2 \leq a \leq b$ , and  $k \geq 4$ , it follows that

$$1 \leq a - 1 \leq 2^{k-1} - 2 \text{ and } k - 1 \leq b - 1 \leq 2^k - a - 2. \quad (2.2)$$

We consider two cases, according to  $a \leq k$  or  $a \geq k + 1$ .

*Case 1.*  $2 \leq a \leq k$ . Let  $p = a - 1$ . Then  $1 \leq p \leq k - 1$  and  $b - 1 \leq 2^k - p - 3$  by (2.2). For each integer  $i$  with  $1 \leq i \leq p$ , let  $X_i = \{i\}$  for  $1 \leq i \leq p$ . Next, let

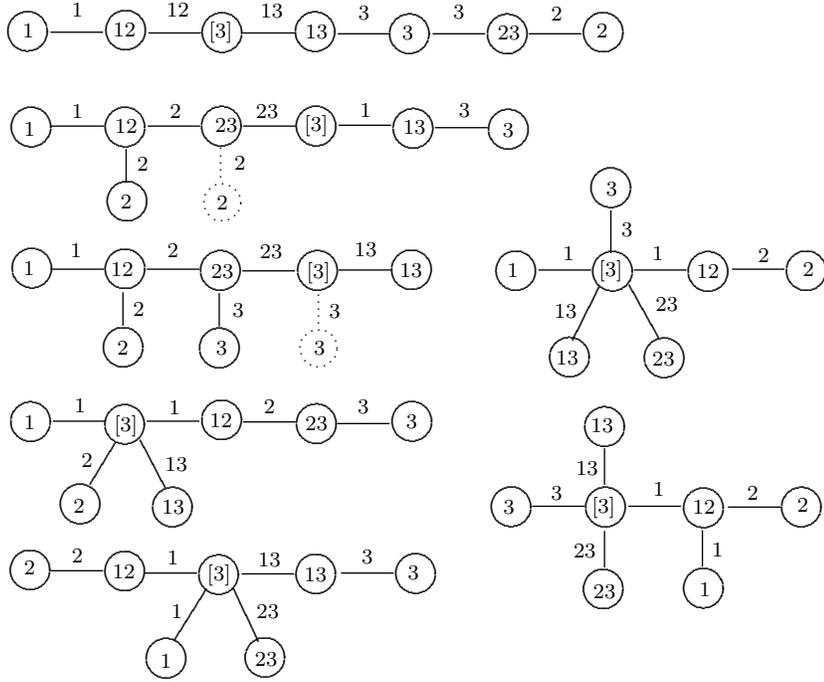


Figure 2.6: Strong royal 3-edge colorings of trees of order 7

$$Y = \mathcal{P}^*([k]) - (\{[p], [k]\} \cup \{X_i : 1 \leq i \leq p\}).$$

Then  $|Y| = 2^k - p - 3$ . Let  $Y_1, Y_2, \dots, Y_{2^k - p - 3}$  be the  $2^k - p - 3$  distinct elements of  $Y$  such that  $Y_j = \{j, k\}$  for  $1 \leq j \leq k - 1$ . Define an edge coloring  $c : E(T) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}^*([k])$  by

$$c(e) = \begin{cases} X_1 & \text{if } e = uv \text{ or } e = uu_1 \\ X_i & \text{if } e = uu_i \text{ for } 2 \leq i \leq p \\ Y_j & \text{if } e = vv_i \text{ for } 1 \leq j \leq b - 1 \leq 2^k - p - 3. \end{cases}$$

This is shown in Figure 2.7 for a double star of order  $n = 15$  where  $a = 4$  and  $b = 11$ . Since  $p = a - 1 \leq k - 1$  and  $b - 1 \geq k - 1$ , it follows that  $c'(u) = [p] \neq [k] = c'(v)$ . In fact, the induced vertex coloring  $c' : V(T) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}^*([k])$  of  $T$  is given by

$$c'(x) = \begin{cases} X_i & \text{if } x = u_i \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq p \\ [p] & \text{if } x = u \\ [k] & \text{if } x = v \\ Y_j & \text{if } x = v_j \text{ for } 1 \leq j \leq b - 1 \leq 2^k - p - 3. \end{cases}$$

Since  $c'$  is rainbow,  $c$  is a strong royal  $k$ -edge coloring of  $T$ .

*Case 2.*  $k + 1 \leq a \leq 2^{k-1} - 1$ . Let  $p = a - 1$ . It follows that

$$k \leq p \leq 2^{k-1} - 2 = |\mathcal{P}^*([k-1]) - \{[k-1]\}|.$$

Let  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_p$  be distinct elements of  $\mathcal{P}^*([k-1]) - \{[k-1]\}$  such that  $X_i = \{i\}$  for  $1 \leq i \leq k-2$ . Next, let

$$Y = \mathcal{P}^*([k]) - (\{[k-1], [k]\} \cup \{X_i : 1 \leq i \leq p\}).$$

Then  $|Y| = 2^k - 3 - p$ . Let  $Y_1, Y_2, \dots, Y_{2^k-p-3}$  be the  $2^k - p - 3$  distinct elements of  $Y$  such that  $Y_j = \{j, k\}$  for  $1 \leq j \leq k-1$ . Define an edge coloring  $c : E(T) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}^*([k])$  by

$$c(e) = \begin{cases} X_1 & \text{if } e = uv \text{ or } e = uu_1 \\ X_i & \text{if } e = uu_i \text{ and } 2 \leq i \leq p \\ Y_j & \text{if } e = vv_i \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq b-1 \leq 2^{k-1} - p - 3. \end{cases}$$

This is shown in Figure 2.7 for a double star of order  $n = 15$  where  $a = 7$  and  $b = 8$ . Since  $p = a - 1 \geq k$  and  $b - 1 \geq k - 1$ , it follows that  $c'(u) = [k-1]$  and  $c'(v) = [k]$ . The induced vertex coloring  $c' : V(T) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}^*([k])$  is given by

$$c'(x) = \begin{cases} X_i & \text{if } x = u_i \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq p \\ [k-1] & \text{if } x = u \\ [k] & \text{if } x = v \\ Y_j & \text{if } x = v_j \text{ for } 1 \leq j \leq b-1 \leq 2^k - p - 3. \end{cases}$$

Since  $c'$  is rainbow,  $c$  is a strong royal  $k$ -edge coloring of  $T$ . ■

There are other special classes of trees  $T$  of order  $n \geq 4$  for which it has been verified that  $\text{sroy}(T) = \lceil \log_2(n+1) \rceil$  (see [8, 17]). The results obtained thus far on the strong royal indexes of trees suggest the following conjecture.

**Conjecture 2.4.6** *If  $T$  is a tree of order  $n \geq 4$ , then  $\text{sroy}(T) = \lceil \log_2(n+1) \rceil$ .*

For an integer  $n \geq 4$ , let  $k$  be the unique integer such that  $2^{k-1} \leq n \leq 2^k - 1$ . We construct a graph  $G_k$  of order  $2^k - 1$  as follows. The vertices of  $G_k$  are labeled with the  $2^k - 1$  distinct elements of  $\mathcal{P}^*([k])$ . For each  $v \in V(G_k)$ , let  $\ell(v)$  denote the label of  $v$ . Thus,

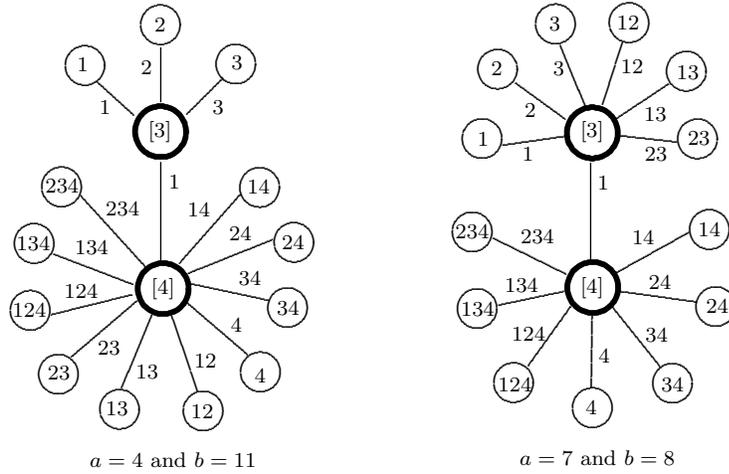


Figure 2.7: Strong royal 4-edge colorings of two double stars of order 15

$$\{\ell(v) : v \in V(G_k)\} = \mathcal{P}^*([k]).$$

Two vertices  $u$  and  $v$  of  $G_k$  are adjacent in  $G_k$  if and only if  $\ell(u) \cap \ell(v) \neq \emptyset$ . The graph  $G_3$  of order  $7 = 2^3 - 1$  is shown in Figure 2.8.

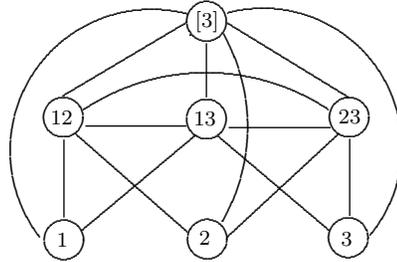


Figure 2.8: The graph  $G_3$  of order  $7 = 2^3 - 1$

Conjecture 2.4.6 is true if and only if for every tree  $T$  of order  $n \geq 4$ , where  $2^{k-1} \leq n \leq 2^k - 1$ , there is a subgraph  $H$  of  $G_k$  isomorphic to  $T$  having the property that every edge  $uv$  of  $H$  is assigned the color  $c(uv) = \ell(u) \cap \ell(v)$  and every vertex  $v$  of  $H$  is assigned the color  $c'(v) = \bigcup_{e \in E_H(v)} c(e)$ , where  $E_H(v)$  is the set of the edges of  $H$  incident with  $v$ , such that  $c'(v) = \ell(v)$ .

For instance, consider the tree  $T$  of order 5 in Figure 2.9 and the graph  $G_3$  in Figure 2.8. Figure 2.9 also shows five subgraphs  $G_{3,1}, G_{3,2}, G_{3,3}, G_{3,4}, G_{3,5}$  of  $G_3$ , each isomorphic to  $T$  with the corresponding edge colors and vertex colors described above. The subgraphs  $G_{3,3}$  and  $G_{3,5}$  result in a strong royal 3-edge

coloring of  $T$ , which verifies Conjecture 2.4.6 for this tree  $T$ . This also shows that there are two distinct ways to give a strong royal 3-edge coloring of  $T$ .

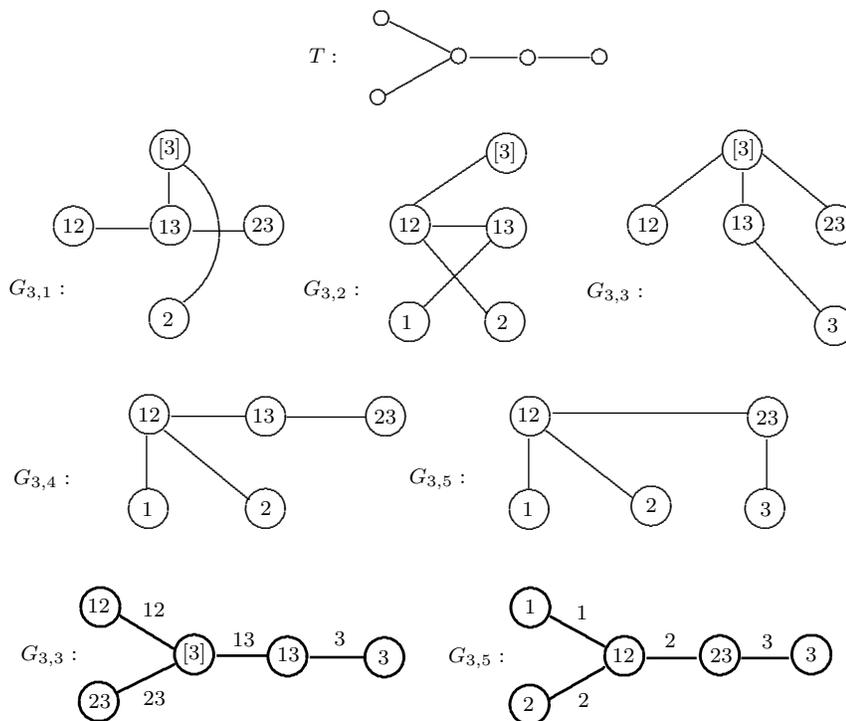


Figure 2.9: Three subgraphs of  $G_3$  isomorphic to  $T$

We have seen that Conjecture 2.4.6 is true for all trees of order  $n$  with  $4 \leq n \leq 7$  as well as all paths, stars, and double stars. Hence, it remains to show that Conjecture 2.4.6 is true for every tree of order  $n \geq 8$  that is not a path, star, or double star. A *caterpillar* is a tree  $T$  of order 3 or more, the removal of whose leaves produces a path (called the *spine* of  $T$ ). A star is therefore a caterpillar of diameter 2 whose spine is a trivial path of order 1 and a double star is a caterpillar of diameter 3 whose spine is a path of order 2. We now move on to the next step by showing that Conjecture 2.4.6 is true as well if  $T$  is a caterpillar whose spine has order 3, that is,  $T$  has diameter 4. In the proof, we assume that the spine of  $T$  is  $(x, y, z)$ ; so  $T$  contains a path  $P = (s, x, y, z, t)$ , where  $\deg_T s = \deg_T t = 1$  and  $\deg_T x \geq 2$ ,  $\deg_T y \geq 2$ , and  $\deg_T z \geq 2$ .

**Theorem 2.4.7** *If  $T$  is a caterpillar of order  $n \geq 8$  and diameter 4, then*

$$\text{sroy}(T) = \lceil \log_2(n + 1) \rceil.$$

**Proof.** Let  $k = \lceil \log_2(n+1) \rceil \geq 4$ . Then  $2^{k-1} \leq n \leq 2^k - 1$ . By Proposition 2.3.3, it suffices to show that  $T$  has a strong royal  $k$ -edge coloring.

We consider three cases base on the number of internal vertices of  $P$  that have neighbors not in  $P$ .

*Case 1. Exactly one of  $x, y$  and  $z$  has degree exceeding 2.* We may assume that exactly one of  $x$  and  $y$  is adjacent to  $n - 5 \geq 3$  vertices not on  $P$ .

*Subcase 1.1.  $x$  is adjacent to  $n - 5$  vertices not on  $P$ .* Let  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_{n-5}$  be the neighbors of  $x$  not on  $P$  and let  $e_i = xx_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq n - 5$ . Let  $S_1 = \{1, k\}$ ,  $S_2 = [2, k]$  and let  $S_3, S_4, \dots, S_{n-5}$  be distinct nonempty proper subsets of  $[k]$  different from  $\{1\}$ ,  $\{2\}$ ,  $\{3\}$ ,  $\{2, 3\}$ ,  $\{1, k\}$ ,  $[2, k]$ . Define an edge coloring  $c : E(T) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}^*([k])$  by

$$c(e) = \begin{cases} \{1\} & \text{if } e = sx \\ \{2\} & \text{if } e = xy \text{ or } e = yz \\ \{3\} & \text{if } e = zt \\ S_i & \text{if } e = e_i \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq n - 5. \end{cases}$$

Then  $c'(s) = \{1\}$ ,  $c'(x) = [k]$ ,  $c'(y) = \{2\}$ ,  $c'(z) = \{2, 3\}$ ,  $c'(t) = \{3\}$ , and  $c'(x_i) = S_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq n - 5$ . Since  $c'$  is rainbow,  $c$  is a strong royal  $k$ -edge coloring of  $T$ .

*Subcase 1.2.  $y$  is adjacent to  $n - 5 \geq 3$  vertices not on  $P$ .* Let  $y_1, y_2, \dots, y_{n-5}$  be the neighbors of  $y$  not on  $P$  and let  $e_i = yy_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq n - 5$ . Let  $S_1 = \{1, k\}$ ,  $S_2 = [2, k]$  and let  $S_3, S_4, \dots, S_{n-5}$  be distinct nonempty proper subsets of  $[k]$  different from  $\{1\}$ ,  $\{3\}$ ,  $\{1, 2\}$ ,  $\{2, 3\}$ ,  $\{1, k\}$ ,  $[2, k]$ . Define an edge coloring  $c : E(T) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}^*([k])$  by

$$c(e) = \begin{cases} \{1\} & \text{if } e = sx \\ \{2\} & \text{if } e = xy \text{ or } e = yz \\ \{3\} & \text{if } e = zt \\ S_i & \text{if } e = e_i \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq n - 5. \end{cases}$$

Then  $c'(s) = \{1\}$ ,  $c'(x) = \{1, 2\}$ ,  $c'(y) = [k]$ ,  $c'(z) = \{2, 3\}$ ,  $c'(t) = \{3\}$ , and  $c'(x_i) = S_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq n - 5$ . Since  $c'$  is rainbow,  $c$  is a strong royal  $k$ -edge coloring of  $T$ .

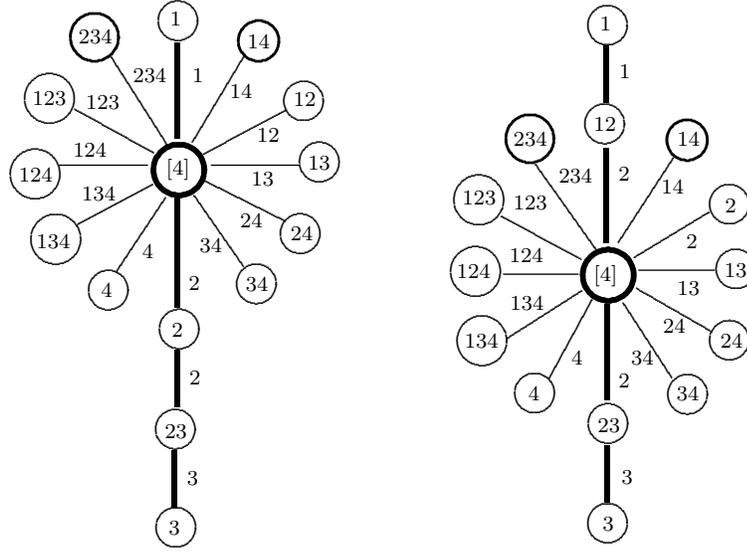


Figure 2.10: Strong royal 4-edge colorings of two caterpillars of order 15 and diameter 4 in Case 1

*Case 2. Exactly two of  $x, y$  and  $z$  have degree exceeding 2.* We may assume that  $x$  has degree exceeding 2 and exactly one of  $y$  and  $z$  has degree exceeding 2.

*Subcase 2.1.  $x$  and  $z$  have degree exceeding 2.* We may assume that  $x$  is adjacent to the  $p$  vertices  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_p$  not on  $P$  and  $z$  is adjacent to the  $q$  vertices  $z_1, z_2, \dots, z_q$  not on  $P$ , where  $1 \leq p \leq q$  and  $p + q = n - 5$ . Then  $p \leq \frac{1}{2}(n - 5) \leq \frac{1}{2}(2^k - 6)$  and so  $p \leq 2^{k-1} - 3$ . Let  $S_1, S_2, \dots, S_p$  be distinct nonempty proper subsets of  $[k - 1]$  where  $S_1 = [2, k - 1]$  such that  $S_i \neq \{1\}$  for  $2 \leq i \leq p$ . Let  $T_1, T_2, \dots, T_p$  be distinct nonempty proper subsets of  $[k]$  different from  $S_1, S_2, \dots, S_p$  such that  $T_1 = [2, k]$ ,  $T_2 = \{1\} \cup [3, k]$  and  $T_i \neq \{1\}, \{k\}, \{1, k\}, [k - 1]$  for  $3 \leq i \leq p$ . Thus, for  $1 \leq i \leq p$ ,

$$S_i \in \mathcal{P}^*([k - 1]) - \{\{1\}, [k - 1]\}$$

and for  $1 \leq i \leq q$ ,

$$T_i \in \mathcal{P}^*([k]) - [\{S_i : 1 \leq i \leq p\} \cup \{\{1\}, \{k\}, \{1, k\}, [k - 1], [k]\}]$$

Define an edge coloring  $c : E(T) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}^*([k])$  by

$$c(e) = \begin{cases} \{1\} & \text{if } e = sx \text{ or } e = xy \\ \{k\} & \text{if } e = yz \text{ or } e = zt \\ S_i & \text{if } e = xx_i \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq p \\ T_i & \text{if } e = zz_i \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq q. \end{cases}$$

Then  $c'(s) = \{1\}$ ,  $c'(x) = [k-1]$ ,  $c'(y) = \{1, k\}$ ,  $c'(z) = [k]$ ,  $c'(t) = \{k\}$ ,  $c'(x_i) = S_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq p$  and  $c'(z_i) = T_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq q$ . Since  $c'$  is rainbow,  $c$  is a strong royal  $k$ -edge coloring of  $T$ .

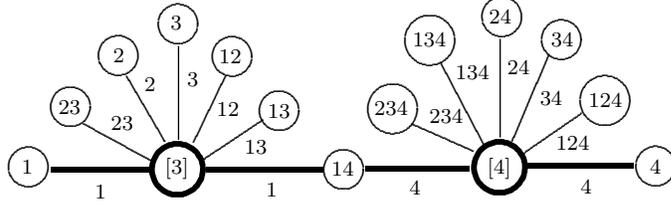


Figure 2.11: A strong royal 4-edge coloring of a caterpillar of order 15 and diameter 4 in Subcase 2.1

*Subcase 2.2.  $x$  and  $y$  have degree exceeding 2.* Suppose that  $x$  is adjacent to the  $p$  vertices  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_p$  not on  $P$  and  $y$  is adjacent to the  $q$  vertices  $y_1, y_2, \dots, y_q$  not on  $P$ . Then  $p, q \geq 1$  and  $p + q = n - 5$ . There are two subcases, according to whether  $p \leq q$  or  $p > q$ . Observe that

*Subcase 2.2.1.  $p \leq q$ .* Then

$$p \leq \frac{1}{2}(n - 5) \leq \frac{1}{2}(2^k - 6) = 2^{k-1} - 3 = |\mathcal{P}^*([k-1]) - \{\{1\}, [k-1]\}|.$$

Let  $S_1, S_2, \dots, S_p$  be distinct elements of  $\mathcal{P}^*([k-1]) - \{\{1\}, [k-1]\}$  where  $S_1 = [2, k-1]$  and let  $T_1, T_2, \dots, T_q$  be distinct elements of

$$\mathcal{P}^*([k]) - [\{S_i : 1 \leq i \leq p\} \cup \{\{1\}, \{1, k-1, k\}, \{k-1, k\}, [k-1], [k]\}]$$

where  $T_1 = [2, k]$ . Define an edge coloring  $c : E(T) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}^*([k])$  by

$$c(e) = \begin{cases} \{1\} & \text{if } e \in \{sx, xy, yz\} \\ \{k-1, k\} & \text{if } e = zt \\ S_i & \text{if } e = xx_i \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq p \\ T_i & \text{if } e = yy_i \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq q. \end{cases}$$

Then  $c'(s) = \{1\}$ ,  $c'(x) = [k-1]$ ,  $c'(y) = [k]$ ,  $c'(z) = \{1, k-1, k\}$ ,  $c'(t) = \{k-1, k\}$ ,  $c'(x_i) = S_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq p$  and  $c'(y_i) = T_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq q$ . Since  $c'$  is rainbow,  $c$  is a strong royal  $k$ -edge coloring of  $T$ .

*Subcase 2.2.2.  $p > q$ .* Then

$$q < \frac{1}{2}(n - 5) \leq \frac{1}{2}(2^k - 6) = 2^{k-1} - 3 = |\mathcal{P}^*([k - 1]) - \{\{1\}, [k - 1]\}|.$$

Let  $S_1, S_2, \dots, S_q$  be distinct elements of  $\mathcal{P}^*([k - 1]) - \{\{1\}, [k - 1]\}$  where  $S_1 = [2, k - 1]$  and let  $T_1, T_2, \dots, T_p$  be distinct elements of

$$\mathcal{P}^*([k]) - [\{S_i : 1 \leq i \leq p\} \cup \{\{1\}, \{1, k - 1\}, [k - 1], [k]\}]$$

where  $T_1 = [2, k]$ . Define an edge coloring  $c : E(T) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}^*([k])$  by

$$c(e) = \begin{cases} \{1\} & \text{if } e = xy \text{ or } e = zt \\ \{k - 1\} & \text{if } e = yz \\ \{k\} & \text{if } e = sx \\ T_i & \text{if } e = xx_i \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq p \\ S_i & \text{if } e = yy_i \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq q. \end{cases}$$

Then  $c'(s) = \{k\}$ ,  $c'(x) = [k]$ ,  $c'(y) = [k - 1]$ ,  $c'(z) = \{1, k - 1\}$ ,  $c'(t) = \{1\}$ ,  $c'(x_i) = T_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq p$  and  $c'(y_i) = S_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq q$ . Since  $c'$  is rainbow,  $c$  is a strong royal  $k$ -edge coloring of  $T$ .

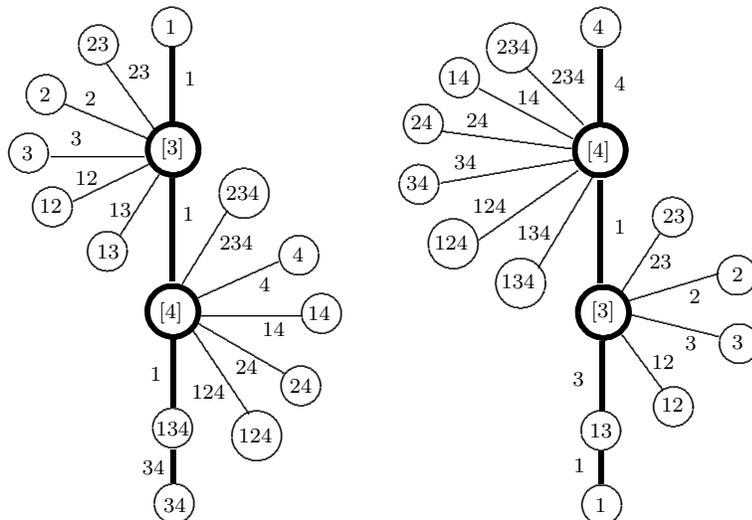


Figure 2.12: Strong royal 4-edge colorings of two caterpillars of order 15 and diameter 4 in Subcase 2.2

*Case 3.* Each of  $x, y$ , and  $z$  has degree 3 or more. Suppose that  $x$  is adjacent to the  $p$  vertices  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_p$  not on  $P$ ,  $y$  is adjacent to the  $q$  vertices  $y_1, y_2, \dots, y_q$  not on  $P$ , and  $z$  is adjacent to the  $r$  vertices  $z_1, z_2, \dots, z_r$  not on  $P$ . Then  $p, q, r \geq 1$

and  $p + q + r = n - 5$ . We consider three subcases, according to the values of  $p, q$ , and  $r$ .

*Subcase 3.1.*  $1 \leq p \leq q \leq r$ . Then

$$p \leq \frac{1}{3}(2^k - 6) = \frac{2^k}{3} - 2 \text{ and } p + q \leq \frac{2}{3}(2^k - 6) = \frac{2^{k+1}}{3} - 4.$$

Since  $|\mathcal{P}([k-2]) - \{[k-2]\}| = 2^{k-2} - 1$ , there are  $2^{k-2} - 1$  distinct subsets in  $\mathcal{P}^*([k-2] \cup \{k\}) - \{[k-2] \cup \{k\}\}$  that contain  $k$ . (Note that it is possible that  $p \geq 2^{k-2}$ .) Let  $S_1, S_2, \dots, S_p$  be  $p$  distinct subsets of  $\mathcal{P}^*([k-2] \cup \{k\}) - \{[k-2] \cup \{k\}\}$  such that  $S_1 = [2, k-2] \cup \{k\}$ ,  $k \in S_i$  for  $2 \leq i \leq p$  if  $p \leq 2^{k-2} - 1$  and  $k \in S_i$  for  $2 \leq i \leq 2^{k-2} - 1$  if  $p \geq 2^{k-2}$ , let  $T_1, T_2, \dots, T_q$  be  $q$  distinct subsets of  $\mathcal{P}^*([k-1]) - \{\{1\}, [k-1]\}$  different from  $S_1, S_2, \dots, S_p$  such that  $T_1 = [2, k-1]$ , and let  $R_1, R_2, \dots, R_r$  be  $r$  distinct subsets of  $\mathcal{P}^*([k])$  different from

$$\{1\}, [k-2] \cup \{k\}, [k-1], [k], \{k-1, k\}, S_1, S_2, \dots, S_p, T_1, T_2, \dots, T_q$$

such that  $R_1 = [2, k]$ . Since there are  $2^{k-2} - 1$  distinct subsets in  $\mathcal{P}^*([k-2] \cup \{k\}) - \{[k-2] \cup \{k\}\}$  that contain  $k$  and  $|\mathcal{P}^*([k-1]) - \{\{1\}, [k-1]\}| = 2^{k-1} - 3$ , it follows that at least

$$(2^{k-2} - 1) + (2^{k-1} - 3) = 3 \cdot 2^{k-2} - 4$$

subsets of  $\mathcal{P}^*([k])$  are available for  $S_1, S_2, \dots, S_p, T_1, T_2, \dots, T_q$ . Because

$$p + q \leq \frac{2^{k+1}}{3} - 4 \leq 3 \cdot 2^{k-2} - 4,$$

these  $p + q$  distinct subsets  $S_1, S_2, \dots, S_p, T_1, T_2, \dots, T_q$  of  $\mathcal{P}^*([k])$  exist. Define an edge coloring  $c : E(T) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}^*([k])$  by

$$c(e) = \begin{cases} \{1\} & \text{if } e \in \{sx, xy, yz\} \\ \{k-1, k\} & \text{if } e = zt \\ S_i & \text{if } e = xx_i \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq p \\ T_i & \text{if } e = yy_i \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq q \\ R_i & \text{if } e = zz_i \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq r. \end{cases}$$

Then  $c'(s) = \{1\}$ ,  $c'(x) = [k-2] \cup \{k\}$ ,  $c'(y) = [k-1]$ ,  $c'(z) = [k]$ ,  $c'(t) = \{k-1, k\}$ ,  $c'(x_i) = S_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq p$ ,  $c'(y_i) = T_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq q$  and  $c'(z_i) = R_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq r$ . Since  $c'$  is rainbow,  $c$  is a strong royal  $k$ -edge coloring of  $T$ .

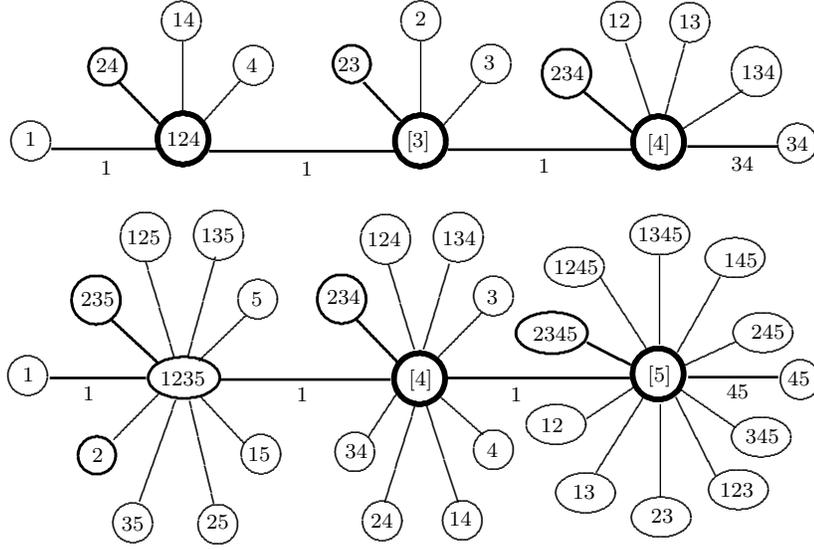


Figure 2.13: Illustrating strong royal edge colorings of caterpillars of order  $2^k - 1$  for  $k = 4, 5$  in Subcase 3.1

For example, Figure 2.13 shows strong royal edge colorings of caterpillars of order  $2^k - 1$  for  $k = 4, 5$ .

*Subcase 3.2.*  $q < \min\{p, r\}$ . We may assume that  $q < p \leq r$ . Then

$$q \leq \frac{1}{3}(2^k - 6) = \frac{2^k}{3} - 2 \text{ and } p + q \leq \frac{2}{3}(2^k - 6) = \frac{2^{k+1}}{3} - 4.$$

Let  $S_1, S_2, \dots, S_q$  be distinct subsets of  $\mathcal{P}^*([k-2] \cup \{k\}) - \{[k-2] \cup \{k\}\}$  such that  $S_1 = [2, k-2] \cup \{k\}$ ,  $k \in S_i$  for  $2 \leq i \leq q$  if  $q \leq 2^{k-2} - 1$  and  $k \in S_i$  for  $2 \leq i \leq 2^{k-2} - 1$  if  $q \geq 2^{k-2}$ , let  $T_1, T_2, \dots, T_p$  be distinct subsets of  $\mathcal{P}^*([k-1]) - \{\{1\}, [k-1]\}$  different from  $S_1, S_2, \dots, S_q$  such that  $T_1 = [2, k-1]$ , and let  $R_1, R_2, \dots, R_r$  be distinct subsets of  $\mathcal{P}^*([k])$  different from

$$\{1\}, [k-2] \cup \{k\}, [k-1], [k], \{k-1, k\}, S_1, S_2, \dots, S_q, T_1, T_2, \dots, T_p$$

such that  $R_1 = [2, k]$ . Since there are  $2^{k-2} - 1$  distinct subsets in  $\mathcal{P}^*([k-2] \cup \{k\}) - \{[k-2] \cup \{k\}\}$  that contain  $k$  and  $|\mathcal{P}^*([k-1]) - \{\{1\}, [k-1]\}| = 2^{k-1} - 3$ , it follows that at least

$$(2^{k-2} - 1) + (2^{k-1} - 3) = 3 \cdot 2^{k-2} - 4$$

subsets of  $\mathcal{P}^*([k])$  are available for  $S_1, S_2, \dots, S_q, T_1, T_2, \dots, T_p$ . Since

$$p + q \leq \frac{2^{k+1}}{3} - 4 \leq 3 \cdot 2^{k-2} - 4,$$

these  $p + q$  distinct subsets  $S_1, S_2, \dots, S_q, T_1, T_2, \dots, T_p$  exist. Define an edge coloring  $c : E(T) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}^*([k])$  by

$$c(e) = \begin{cases} \{1\} & \text{if } e \in \{sx, xy, yz\} \\ \{k-1, k\} & \text{if } e = zt \\ T_i & \text{if } e = xx_i \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq p \\ S_i & \text{if } e = yy_i \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq q \\ R_i & \text{if } e = zz_i \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq r. \end{cases}$$

Then  $c'(s) = \{1\}$ ,  $c'(x) = [k-1]$ ,  $c'(y) = [k-2] \cup \{k\}$ ,  $c'(z) = [k]$ ,  $c'(t) = \{k-1, k\}$ ,  $c'(x_i) = T_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq p$ ,  $c'(y_i) = S_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq q$  and  $c'(z_i) = R_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq r$ . Since  $c'$  is rainbow,  $c$  is a strong royal  $k$ -edge coloring of  $T$ .

*Subcase 3.3.*  $q > \max\{p, r\}$ . We may assume that  $p \leq r < q$ . Then

$$p \leq \frac{1}{3}(2^k - 6) = \frac{2^k}{3} - 2 \text{ and } p + r \leq \frac{2}{3}(2^k - 6) = \frac{2^{k+1}}{3} - 4.$$

Let  $S_1, S_2, \dots, S_p$  be distinct subsets of  $\mathcal{P}^*([k-2] \cup \{k\}) - \{[k-2] \cup \{k\}\}$  such that  $S_1 = [2, k-2] \cup \{k\}$ ,  $k \in S_i$  for  $2 \leq i \leq p$  if  $p \leq 2^{k-2} - 1$  and  $k \in S_i$  for  $2 \leq i \leq 2^{k-2} - 1$  if  $p \geq 2^{k-2}$ , let  $T_1, T_2, \dots, T_r$  be distinct subsets of  $\mathcal{P}^*([k-1]) - \{\{1\}, \{1, k-1\}, [k-1]\}$  different from  $S_1, S_2, \dots, S_p$  such that  $T_1 = [2, k-1]$ , and let  $R_1, R_2, \dots, R_q$  be distinct subsets of  $\mathcal{P}^*([k])$  different from

$$\{1\}, [k-2] \cup \{k\}, [k-1], [k], \{1, k-1\}, S_1, S_2, \dots, S_p, T_1, T_2, \dots, T_r$$

such that  $R_1 = [2, k]$ . Since there are  $2^{k-2} - 1$  distinct subsets in  $\mathcal{P}^*([k-2] \cup \{k\}) - \{[k-2] \cup \{k\}\}$  that contain  $k$  and  $|\mathcal{P}^*([k-1]) - \{\{1\}, \{1, k-1\}, [k-1]\}| = 2^{k-1} - 4$ , it follows that at least

$$(2^{k-2} - 1) + (2^{k-1} - 4) = 3 \cdot 2^{k-2} - 5$$

subsets of  $\mathcal{P}^*([k])$  are available for  $S_1, S_2, \dots, S_p, T_1, T_2, \dots, T_r$ . Since

$$p + r \leq \frac{2^{k+1}}{3} - 4 \leq 3 \cdot 2^{k-2} - 5,$$

these  $p + r$  distinct subsets  $S_1, S_2, \dots, S_p, T_1, T_2, \dots, T_r$  exist. Define an edge coloring  $c : E(T) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}^*([k])$  by

$$c(e) = \begin{cases} \{1\} & \text{if } e \in \{sx, xy, yz\} \\ \{1, k-1\} & \text{if } e = zt \\ S_i & \text{if } e = xx_i \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq p \\ R_i & \text{if } e = yy_i \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq q \\ T_i & \text{if } e = zz_i \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq r. \end{cases}$$

Then  $c'(s) = \{1\}$ ,  $c'(x) = [k-2] \cup \{k\}$ ,  $c'(y) = [k]$ ,  $c'(z) = [k-1]$ ,  $c'(t) = \{k-1, k\}$ ,  $c'(x_i) = S_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq p$ ,  $c'(y_i) = R_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq q$  and  $c'(z_i) = T_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq r$ . Since  $c'$  is rainbow,  $c$  is a strong royal  $k$ -edge coloring of  $T$ . ■

It has been verified in [8] that if  $G$  is a connected graph of order  $n \geq 4$ , then  $\text{sroy}(G) \leq \lceil \log_2(n+1) \rceil + 2$ . On the other hand, if Conjecture 2.4.6 is true, then for a connected graph  $G$  of order  $n \geq 4$  there are only two possible values for  $\text{sroy}(G)$  (namely  $\lceil \log_2(n+1) \rceil$  and  $\lceil \log_2(n+1) \rceil + 1$ ) by Propositions 2.3.3 and 2.4.1. Based on these observations, we make the following conjecture.

**Conjecture 2.4.8** *If  $G$  is a connected graph of order  $n \geq 4$ , then*

$$\lceil \log_2(n+1) \rceil \leq \text{sroy}(G) \leq \lceil \log_2(n+1) \rceil + 1.$$

Since we know that the lower bound for  $\text{sroy}(G)$  is true in Conjecture 2.4.8, the conjecture can be subsequently restated.

**Conjecture 2.4.9** *If  $G$  is a connected graph of order  $n \geq 4$  where  $2^{k-1} \leq n \leq 2^k - 1$  for some integer  $k$ , then there exists a strong royal  $(k+1)$ -edge coloring of  $G$ .*

We have seen numerous examples of connected graphs  $G$  of order  $n \geq 4$  where  $\text{sroy}(G) = \lceil \log_2(n+1) \rceil$ . Indeed, every tree of order  $n \geq 4$  has either been shown to have strong royal index  $\lceil \log_2(n+1) \rceil$  or has been conjectured to have this value for its strong royal index. By Proposition 2.3.2, if  $n \geq 4$  is an integer with  $2^k < n < 2^{k+1}$  for some integer  $k \geq 2$ , then  $\text{sroy}(K_n) = \lceil \log_2(n+1) \rceil + 1$ . Thus, both bounds in Conjecture 2.4.8 are attainable. Hence, if Conjectures 2.4.8 and 2.4.9 are true, then the resulting theorem cannot be improved. The only question that would remain then is for a given connected graph  $G$  of order  $n \geq 4$ , which of these two values is the strong royal index of  $G$ ?

# Chapter 3

## Royal-Zero & Royal-One Graphs

**Abstract:** It was conjectured that if  $G$  is a connected graph of order  $n \geq 4$  where  $2^{k-1} \leq n \leq 2^k - 1$  for a positive integer  $k$ , then the strong royal index of  $G$  is either  $k$  or  $k + 1$ . A connected graph  $G$  of order  $n \geq 3$  where  $2^{k-1} \leq n \leq 2^k - 1$  is a royal-zero graph if  $\text{sroy}(G) = k$  and is a royal-one graph if  $\text{sroy}(G) = k + 1$ . We investigate this conjecture for several well-known classes of graphs along with other information concerning royal-zero and royal-one graphs. A sufficient condition for a graph to be royal-one is presented.

### 3.1 Introduction

We have conjectured that the strong royal index of every connected graph of order  $n \geq 4$  where  $2^{k-1} \leq n \leq 2^k - 1$  is either  $k$  or  $k + 1$ . A connected graph  $G$  of order  $n \geq 3$  where  $2^{k-1} \leq n \leq 2^k - 1$  is a *royal-zero graph* if  $\text{sroy}(G) = k$  and is a *royal-one graph* if  $\text{sroy}(G) = k + 1$ . Using this framework, Conjecture 2.4.9 can be rephrased using this terminology.

**Conjecture 3.1.1** *Every connected graph of order at least 4 is either royal-zero or royal-one.*

In this chapter, we investigate conditions concerning the size and minimum degree for which a connected graph is royal-zero or royal-one.

## 3.2 Some Well-Known Classes of Graphs

We begin by considering the strong royal index of every cycle  $C_n$  of order  $n \geq 3$ . Note that the size of  $C_n$  is  $n$  and  $\delta(C_n) = 2$ . While the strong royal index of each cycle was stated in [8], we present a proof that provides a strong royal coloring of each cycle  $C_n$  of order  $n \geq 3$ .

**Theorem 3.2.1** *For every integer  $n \geq 3$ ,*

$$\text{sroy}(C_n) = \begin{cases} 1 + \lceil \log_2(n+1) \rceil & \text{if } n = 3, 7 \\ \lceil \log_2(n+1) \rceil & \text{if } n \neq 3, 7. \end{cases}$$

*That is, if  $C_n$  is a cycle of length  $n \geq 3$  where  $2^{k-1} \leq n \leq 2^k - 1$  for some integer  $k$ , then  $\text{sroy}(C_n) = k$  unless  $n = 3$  or  $n = 7$ , in which case,  $\text{sroy}(C_3) = 3$  and  $\text{sroy}(C_7) = 4$ .*

**Proof.** Let  $k = \lceil \log_2(n+1) \rceil \geq 2$ . Then  $2^{k-1} \leq n \leq 2^k - 1$ . We show that  $\text{sroy}(C_3) = 3$ ,  $\text{sroy}(C_7) = 4$ , and  $\text{sroy}(C_n) = k$  if  $n \neq 3, 7$ . Figure 3.1 shows a strong royal 3-edge coloring of  $C_3$  and a strong royal 4-edge coloring of  $C_7$ , which implies that  $\text{sroy}(C_3) \leq 3$  and  $\text{sroy}(C_7) \leq 4$ . (As before, we write the set  $\{a\}$  as  $a$ ,  $\{a, b\}$  as  $ab$ , and  $\{a, b, c\}$  as  $abc$ .) If  $\text{sroy}(C_3) = 2$ , then because  $|\mathcal{P}^*([2])| = 3$ , there are vertices of  $C_3$  colored 1 and 2, implying the existence of two edges that are colored 1 and two edges that are colored 2, which is impossible. If  $\text{sroy}(C_7) = 3$ , then because  $|\mathcal{P}^*([3])| = 7$ , there are vertices of  $C_7$  colored 1, 2, and 3, implying that these colors are each assigned to at least two edges of  $C_7$ . Regardless of how the seventh edge of  $C_7$  is colored, the resulting set of vertex colors is not  $\mathcal{P}^*([3])$ . As a result,  $\text{sroy}(C_3) = 3$  and  $\text{sroy}(C_7) = 4$ . By Proposition 2.3.3, it suffices to show that  $C_n$  has a strong royal  $k$ -edge coloring if  $n \neq 3, 7$ . Figure 3.1 also shows a strong royal 3-edge coloring for each of  $C_4, C_5$ , and  $C_6$  yielding  $\text{sroy}(C_n) = 3$  for  $n = 4, 5, 6$ .

Next, suppose that  $n \geq 8$ , where  $2^{k-1} \leq n \leq 2^k - 1$  for a unique integer  $k \geq 4$ . We show that  $C_n$  has a strong royal  $k$ -edge coloring by considering two cases, depending on whether  $n$  is even or  $n$  is odd. Let  $P_n = (v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n)$  where  $e_i = v_i v_{i+1}$  for  $1 \leq i \leq n-1$ .

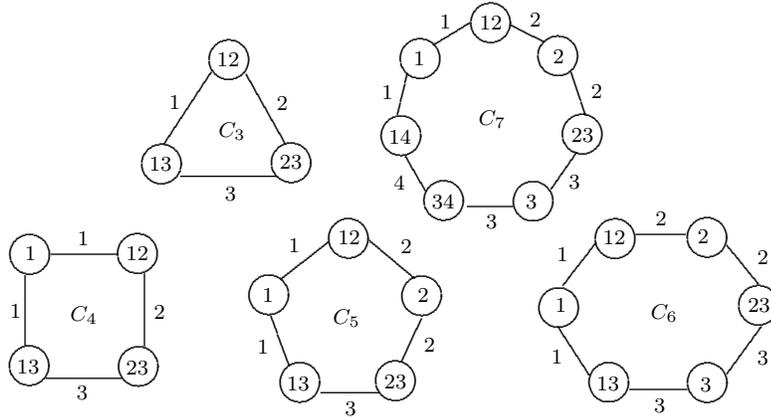


Figure 3.1: Strong royal colorings of  $C_n$  where  $3 \leq n \leq 7$

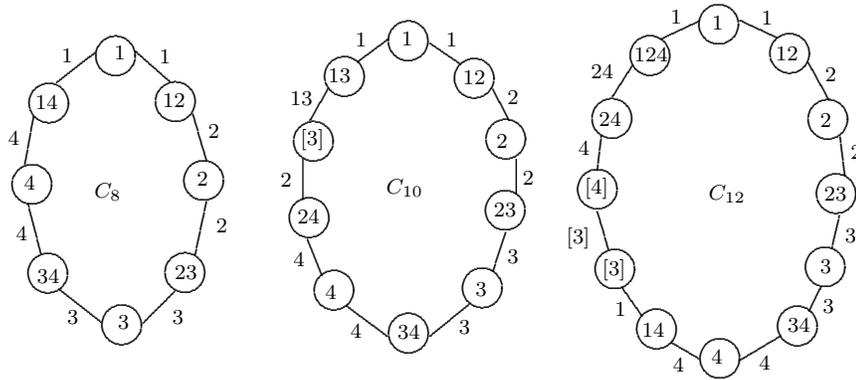


Figure 3.2: Strong royal 4-edge colorings of  $C_n$  for  $n = 8, 10, 12$

*Case 1.  $n \geq 8$  is even.* Figure 3.2 shows strong royal 4-edge colorings of  $C_8$ ,  $C_{10}$ , and  $C_{12}$ . It follows that  $\text{sroy}(C_n) = 4$  for  $n = 8, 10, 12$ .

We may assume that  $n = 2r \geq 14$  where  $r \geq 7$  is an integer such that  $2^{k-2} \leq r \leq 2^{k-1} - 1$ . If  $r = 7$ , then  $k - 1 = 3$ . However, if  $8 \leq r \leq 15$ , then  $k - 1 = 4$ . A strong royal  $(k - 1)$ -edge coloring  $c$  for each path  $P_r$  ( $7 \leq r \leq 15$ ) is shown in Figure 3.3.

For  $7 \leq r \leq 15$ , let  $P_r = (v_1, v_2, \dots, v_r)$  and let  $P_r^* = (u_1, u_1, \dots, u_r)$ . The path  $P_{2r}$  is constructed from  $P_r$  and  $P_r^*$  by adding the edge  $v_r u_r$  and the cycle  $C_{2r}$  is constructed from  $P_{2r}$  by adding the edge  $v_1 u_1$ . The edge coloring  $c$  is first extended to an edge coloring  $c$  of  $P_{2r}$  by defining  $c(u_i u_{i+1}) = c(v_i v_{i+1}) \cup \{k\}$  (where  $k = 4$  if  $r = 7$  and  $k = 5$  if  $8 \leq r \leq 15$ ) for  $1 \leq i \leq r - 1$  and  $c(v_r u_r) = c(v_{r-1} v_r)$ . The resulting coloring is extended to an edge coloring  $c$  of  $C_{2r}$  by defining  $c(v_1 u_1) = c(v_1 v_2)$ . Note that no vertex of  $P_{2r}$  is colored  $\{k\}$ .

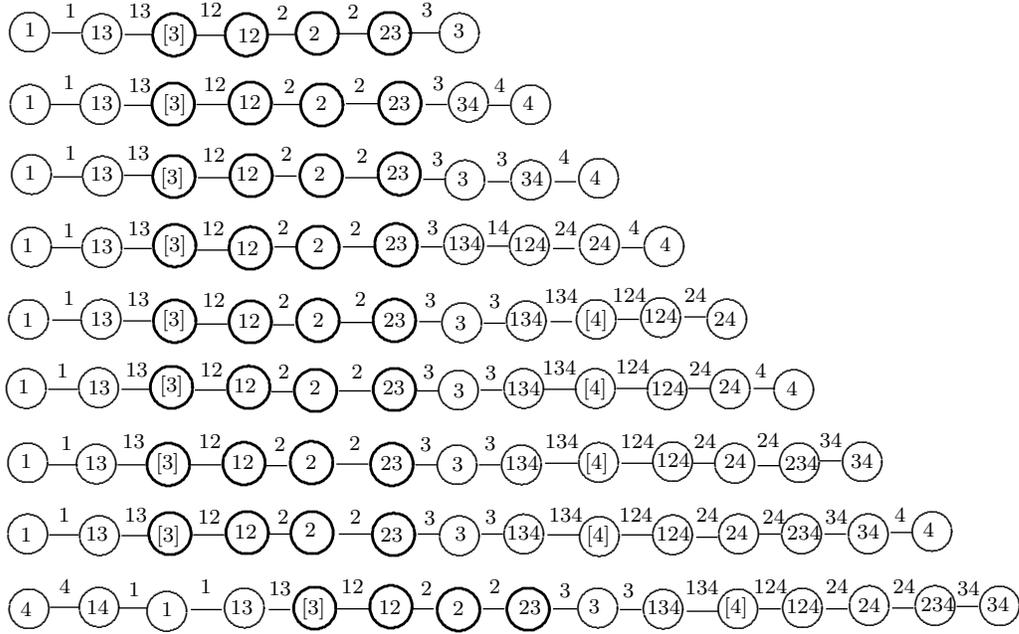


Figure 3.3: Strong royal  $(k - 1)$ -edge colorings of  $P_r$  for  $7 \leq r \leq 15$

Since this edge coloring is a strong royal  $k$ -edge coloring of  $C_{2r}$ , it follows that  $\text{sroy}(P_{2r}) = \text{sroy}(C_{2r}) = k$  for  $7 \leq r \leq 15$ , where  $k = 4$  if  $r = 7$  and  $k = 5$  if  $8 \leq r \leq 15$ . Figure 3.4 shows the construction of a strong royal 4-edge coloring of  $C_{14}$  from the paths  $P_7$  and  $P_7^*$ .

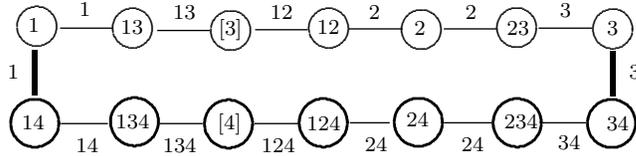


Figure 3.4: Constructing a strong royal 4-edge coloring of  $C_{14}$

For each such path  $P_{2r}$  ( $7 \leq r \leq 15$ ), we construct the path  $P_{2r+1}$  by adding a new vertex  $u_0$  and the edge  $u_0u_1$  and coloring the edge  $u_0u_1$  by  $\{k\}$ , where  $k = 4$  if  $r = 7$  and  $k = 5$  if  $8 \leq r \leq 15$ . Then  $u_0$  is colored  $\{k\}$ , resulting in a strong royal  $k$ -edge coloring of  $P_{2r+1}$  for  $7 \leq r \leq 15$ . Next, we repeat this procedure by beginning with the paths  $P_{14}, P_{15}, \dots, P_{31}$ —that is, we use  $P_{14}$  and  $P_{15}$  to create strong royal 5-edge colorings of  $C_{28}$  and  $C_{30}$  respectively and use  $P_{16}, \dots, P_{31}$  to create a strong royal 6-edge coloring of  $C_{2r}$  for  $15 \leq r \leq 31$ . Iteratively applying this process produces the desired coloring for all even cycles. Therefore,  $\text{sroy}(C_n) = k$  for all

even integers  $n \geq 4$  with  $2^{k-1} \leq n \leq 2^k - 1$ .

*Case 2.  $n \geq 9$  is odd.* Figure 3.5 shows a strong royal 4-edge coloring for each of  $C_9$ ,  $C_{11}$ , and  $C_{13}$  and so  $\text{sroy}(C_n) = 4$  for  $n = 9, 11, 13$ . We may assume that  $n = 2r + 1 \geq 15$ , where  $r \geq 7$ .

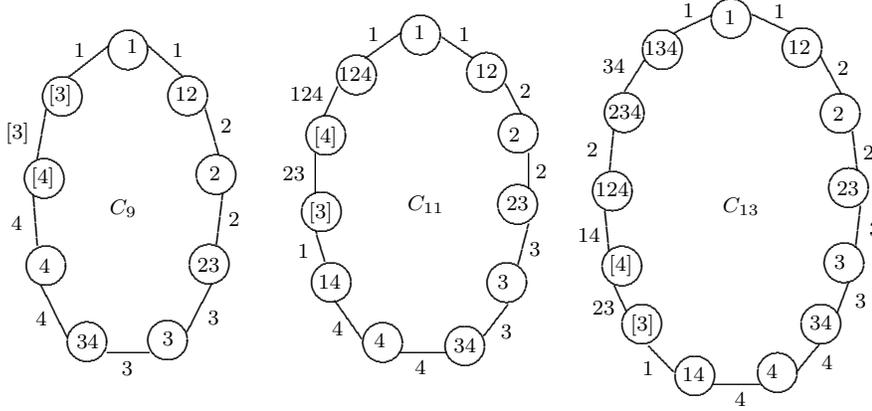


Figure 3.5: Strong royal 4-edge colorings of  $C_n$  for  $n = 9, 11, 13$

For each path  $P_r$ , there is a subpath  $Q = (v_i, v_{i+1}, v_{i+2}, v_{i+3})$ , where  $3 \leq i < i + 4 \leq r$  such that

$$c'(v_{i+1}) = \{1, 2\}, c(v_{i+1}v_{i+2}) = \{2\}, \text{ and } c'(v_{i+2}) = \{2\}.$$

From the manner in which each even cycle  $C_{2r}$  was constructed and a strong royal  $k$ -edge coloring  $c$  of  $C_{2r}$  was defined in Case 1, the path  $Q^* = (u_i, u_{i+1}, u_{i+2}, u_{i+3})$  is a subpath in  $C_{2r}$  such that

$$c'(u_{i+1}) = \{1, 2, k\}, c(u_{i+1}u_{i+2}) = \{2, k\}, \text{ and } c'(u_{i+2}) = \{2, k\}.$$

Furthermore,  $c'(x) \neq \{k\}$  for each vertex  $x$  of  $C_{2r}$ . We now construct the cycle  $C_{2r+1}$  from  $C_{2r}$  by deleting the edge  $u_{i+1}u_{i+2}$  from  $C_{2r}$  and adding a new vertex  $u$  along with the two new edges  $u_{i+1}u$  and  $uu_{i+2}$ . We define an edge coloring  $c$  of  $C_{2r+1}$  from the strong royal  $k$ -edge coloring of  $C_{2r}$  (as described in Case 1) by assigning the color  $\{k\}$  to the edges  $u_{i+1}u$  and  $uu_{i+2}$  where the colors of remaining edges of  $C_{2r+1}$  are the same as in  $C_{2r}$ . Thus,  $c'(u) = \{k\}$  and  $c'(x)$  is the same as in  $C_{2r}$  for all other vertices  $x$  of  $C_{2r+1}$ . Figure 3.6 shows the construction of such a strong royal 4-edge coloring of  $C_{15}$  from the strong royal 4-edge coloring of  $C_{14}$  of Figure 3.4. Since this edge coloring is a strong royal  $k$ -edge coloring of  $C_{2r+1}$ ,

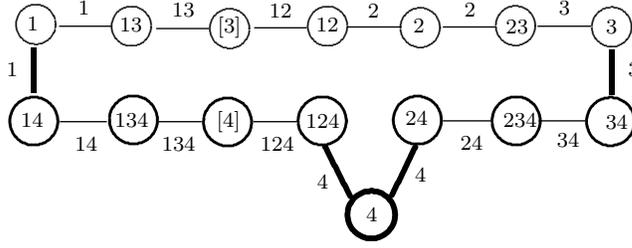


Figure 3.6: Constructing a strong royal 4-edge coloring of  $C_{15}$

it follows that  $\text{sroy}(C_n) = k$  for all odd integers  $n \geq 3$  with  $2^{k-1} \leq n \leq 2^k - 1$  and the exception of  $n = 3$  and  $n = 7$ . ■

Theorem 3.2.1 demonstrates that  $C_3$  and  $C_7$  are royal-one, but all other cycles are royal-zero. For complete graphs, the following result is a consequence of Proposition 2.3.2.

**Proposition 3.2.2** *For an integer  $n \geq 4$ , the complete graph  $K_n$  is a royal-zero graph if  $n$  is a power of 2 and royal-one otherwise.*

The *corona*  $\text{cor}(G)$  of a graph  $G$  is the graph obtained from  $G$  by adding a pendant edge at each vertex of  $G$ . Note that if the order of  $G$  is  $n$ , then the order of  $\text{cor}(G)$  is  $2n$ . The strong royal index of  $\text{cor}(G)$  never exceeds  $\text{sroy}(G)$  by more than 1.

**Proposition 3.2.3** *If  $G$  is a connected graph of order  $n \geq 4$ , then*

$$\text{sroy}(\text{cor}(G)) \leq \text{sroy}(G) + 1.$$

*Consequently, if  $G$  is a royal-zero graph, then so is  $\text{cor}(G)$ .*

**Proof.** Let  $V(G) = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}$  and let  $H = \text{cor}(G)$  be obtained from  $G$  by adding the pendant edge  $u_i v_i$  at  $v_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . Suppose that  $\text{sroy}(G) = k$ . Then there is a strong royal  $k$ -edge coloring  $c_G : E(G) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}^*([k])$  of  $G$ . Define an edge coloring  $c_H : E(H) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}^*([k+1])$  by

$$c_H(e) = \begin{cases} c_G(e) \cup \{k+1\} & \text{if } e \in E(G) \\ c'_G(v_i) & \text{if } e = u_i v_i \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq n. \end{cases}$$

Then the induced vertex coloring  $c'_H$  is given by

$$c'_H(u_i) = c'_G(v_i) \text{ and } c'_H(v_i) = c'_G(v_i) \cup \{k+1\} \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq n.$$

Since  $c'_H$  is rainbow, it follows that  $c_H$  is a strong royal  $(k+1)$ -edge coloring of  $\text{cor}(G)$  and so  $\text{sroy}(H) \leq k+1 = \text{sroy}(G) + 1$ .

If  $G$  is a connected royal-zero graph of order  $n \geq 4$  where  $\text{sroy}(G) = k$ , say, then  $2^{k-1} \leq n \leq 2^k - 1$ . Since  $\text{cor}(G)$  is a connected graph of order  $2n \geq 8$  where  $2^k \leq 2n \leq 2^{k+1} - 2$ , it follows that  $\text{sroy}(\text{cor}(G)) \geq k+1$ . On the other hand, there is a strong royal  $(k+1)$ -edge coloring of  $\text{cor}(G)$  and so  $\text{sroy}(\text{cor}(G)) = k+1$ , which implies that  $\text{cor}(G)$  is royal-zero as well. ■

In fact, a stronger statement can be made, regarding the strong royal index of the corona of any connected graph.

**Proposition 3.2.4** *If  $G$  is a connected graph of order  $n \geq 2$ , then  $\text{cor}(G)$  is royal-zero.*

**Proof.** Let  $V(G) = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}$  and let  $H = \text{cor}(G)$  be obtained from  $G$  by adding the pendant edge  $u_i v_i$  at  $v_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . Let  $k$  be an integer such that  $2^{k-1} \leq n \leq 2^k - 1$ . Then  $2^k \leq 2n < 2^{k+1} - 1$ . Denote  $n$  distinct subsets of  $[k]$  by  $S_i$  with  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . Define an edge coloring  $c : E(H) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}^*([k+1])$  by

$$c(e) = \begin{cases} \{k+1\} & \text{if } e \in E(G) \\ S_i & \text{if } e = u_i v_i \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq n. \end{cases}$$

Since  $G$  is a connected graph, the induced vertex coloring  $c'$  is given by

$$c'(u_i) = S_i \text{ and } c'(v_i) = S_i \cup \{k+1\} \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq n.$$

Since  $c'$  is rainbow, it follows that  $c$  is a strong royal  $(k+1)$ -edge coloring of  $\text{cor}(G)$  and so  $H = \text{cor}(G)$  is royal-zero. ■

A tree  $T$  is called *cubic* if every vertex of  $T$  that is not an end-vertex has degree 3. The following result makes use of the proof of Proposition 3.2.3.

**Corollary 3.2.5** *If  $T$  is a cubic caterpillar of order at least 4, then  $T$  is royal-zero.*

**Proof.** Let  $T$  be a cubic caterpillar. Since the statement is true if  $T$  has four vertices, we may assume that  $T$  has six or more vertices. For an integer  $n \geq 4$  where  $2^{k-1} \leq n \leq 2^k - 1$ , let  $H = P_n = (v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n)$  be a longest path in  $T$ , where then  $\text{diam}(T) = n - 1 \geq 3$  and the order of  $T$  is  $2n - 2$ . As noted earlier, it was shown in [17] that all paths of order 4 or more are royal-zero and so  $\text{sroy}(H) = k$ . Let  $u_i v_i$  be the pendant edges at  $v_i$  for  $2 \leq i \leq n - 1$ . We consider two cases, according to whether  $2^{k-1} < n \leq 2^k - 1$  or  $n = 2^{k-1}$ . In the first case, we apply the same procedure used in the proof of Proposition 3.2.3.

*Case 1.*  $2^{k-1} < n \leq 2^k - 1$ . Then  $2^k \leq 2n - 2 \leq 2^{k+1} - 4$ . Thus, it suffices to show that  $\text{sroy}(T) \leq k + 1$ . Since  $\text{sroy}(H) = k$ , there is a strong royal  $k$ -edge coloring  $c_H : E(H) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}^*([k])$ . Define an edge coloring  $c_T : E(T) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}^*([k + 1])$  by

$$c_T(e) = \begin{cases} c_H(e) \cup \{k + 1\} & \text{if } e \in E(H) \\ c'_H(v_i) & \text{if } e = u_i v_i \text{ for } 2 \leq i \leq n - 1. \end{cases}$$

Then the induced vertex coloring  $c'_T$  is given by

$$c'_T(u_i) = c'_H(v_i) \text{ for } 2 \leq i \leq n - 1 \text{ and } c'_T(v_i) = c'_H(v_i) \cup \{k + 1\} \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq n.$$

Since  $c'_T$  is rainbow, it follows that  $c_T$  is a strong royal  $(k + 1)$ -edge coloring of  $T$  and  $\text{sroy}(T) \leq k + 1$ . Thus,  $T$  is royal-zero.

*Case 2.*  $n = 2^{k-1}$ . Then  $2n - 2 = 2^k - 2$ . Here, we show that  $\text{sroy}(T) = \text{sroy}(H) = k$ . First, we consider the case where  $n = 4$  and  $k = 3$ . A strong royal 3-edge coloring  $c$  of  $H = P_4 = (v_1, v_2, v_3, v_4)$  is shown in Figure 3.7, namely  $c(v_1 v_2) = 1$ ,  $c(v_2 v_3) = \{1, 2\}$ , and  $c(v_3 v_4) = \{1, 3\}$ . Observe that the induced vertex colors of the vertices of  $H$  are all subsets of  $[3]$  containing 1 and  $c'(v_1) = \{1\}$ . The tree  $T$  is constructed from  $H$  by attaching the pendant edges  $u_2 v_2$  and  $u_3 v_3$  to  $v_2$  and  $v_3$ , respectively. The colors of  $u_i v_i$ ,  $i = 2, 3$ , are defined by  $c(u_i v_i) = c'(v_i) - \{1\}$ , which results in a strong royal 3-edge coloring of  $T$ . In the case where  $n = 8$  and  $k = 4$ , we begin with the path  $H = P_8 = (v_1, v_2, \dots, v_8)$ , where the edges  $v_1 v_2$ ,  $v_2 v_3$ ,  $v_3 v_4$  of  $P_8$  are colored as in the case when  $n = 4$ , and define  $c(v_4 v_5) = c'(v_4)$  and  $c(v_i v_{i+1}) = c(v_{8-i} v_{9-i}) \cup \{4\}$  for  $i = 5, 6, 7$ . Again, each edge color and induced vertex color contains 1 and  $c'(v_1) = \{1\}$ . The tree  $T$  in this case is constructed from  $H$  by attaching the pendant edges  $u_i v_i$  for  $2 \leq i \leq 7$ . The color of  $u_i v_i$  is defined by  $c(u_i v_i) = c'(v_i) - \{1\}$  for  $2 \leq i \leq 7$ , which results in a strong royal

4-edge coloring of  $T$ . This is illustrated in Figure 3.7. Continuing in this manner gives the desired result. ■

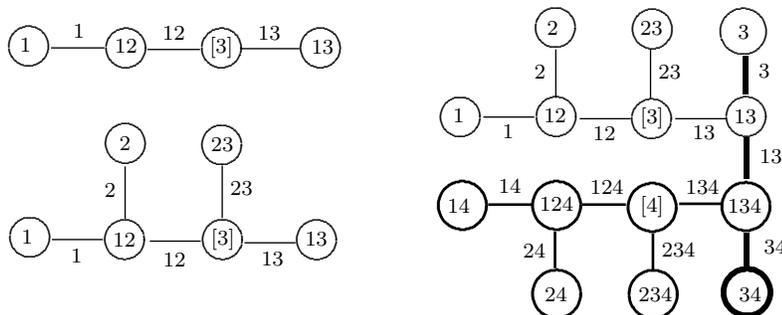


Figure 3.7: Constructing strong royal colorings of the cubic caterpillars

As stated in Proposition 3.2.3, if  $G$  is a connected graph of order 4 or more, then  $\text{sroy}(\text{cor}(G)) \leq \text{sroy}(G) + 1$  and if  $G$  is a royal-zero graph, then  $\text{cor}(G)$  is a royal-zero graph. On the other hand, it is possible that  $G$  is a royal-one graph and  $\text{cor}(G)$  is a royal-zero graph. By Proposition 3.2.2, every complete graph  $K_n$  where  $n$  is not a power of 2 is a royal-one graph. Thus, if  $2^{k-1} + 1 \leq n \leq 2^k - 1$  for some integer  $k \geq 3$ , then  $\text{sroy}(K_n) = k + 1$ . If one were to assign distinct nonempty subsets of  $[k]$  to the  $n$  pendant edges of  $\text{cor}(K_n)$  and assign the color  $\{k + 1\}$  to the remaining  $\binom{n}{2}$  edges of  $\text{cor}(K_n)$ , then we have a strong royal  $(k + 1)$ -edge coloring of  $\text{cor}(K_n)$  and so  $\text{sroy}(\text{cor}(K_n)) = k + 1$ . Therefore,  $\text{cor}(K_n)$  is a royal-zero graph for each integer  $n \geq 5$  where  $n$  is not a power of 2. For a more interesting example, Figure 3.8 shows a strong royal 4-edge coloring of  $\text{cor}(C_7)$  and so  $\text{sroy}(\text{cor}(C_7)) = \text{sroy}(C_7) = 4$  (by Theorem 3.2.1). Thus,  $C_7$  is royal-one, while  $\text{cor}(C_7)$  is royal-zero.

A graph operation somewhat related to the corona of a graph  $G$  is the *Cartesian product* of  $G$  with  $K_2$ . In fact, we have the following result that corresponds to Proposition 3.2.3.

**Proposition 3.2.6** *If  $G$  is a connected graph of order  $n \geq 4$ , then*

$$\text{sroy}(G \square K_2) \leq \text{sroy}(G) + 1.$$

*Consequently, if  $G$  is a royal-zero graph, then  $G \square K_2$  is a royal-zero graph.*

**Proof.** Let  $G$  be a connected graph of order  $n \geq 4$  where  $\text{sroy}(G) = k$  for some positive integer  $k$ . Let  $H = G \square K_2$  where  $G_1$  and  $G_2$  are the two copies

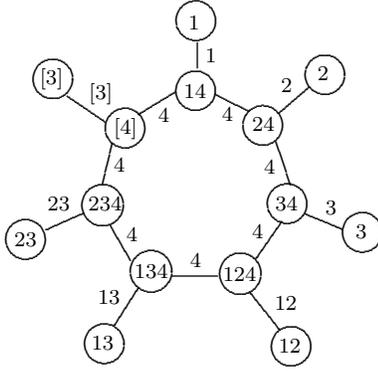


Figure 3.8: A strong royal 4-edge coloring of  $\text{cor}(C_7)$

of  $G$ . Suppose that  $V(G_1) = \{u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n\}$  where  $u_i$  is labeled  $v_i$  in  $G_2$ . Thus,  $V(G_2) = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}$  and  $E(H) = E(G_1) \cup E(G_2) \cup \{u_i v_i : 1 \leq i \leq n\}$ . Since  $\text{sroy}(G) = k$ , there is a strong royal  $k$ -edge coloring  $c_{G_1} : E(G_1) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}^*([k])$  of  $G_1$ . Define an edge coloring  $c_H : E(H) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}^*([k+1])$  by

$$c_H(e) = \begin{cases} c_{G_1}(e) & \text{if } e \in E(G_1) \\ c_{G_1}(u_i u_j) \cup \{k+1\} & \text{if } e = v_i v_j \in E(G_2) \text{ for } 1 \leq i, j \leq n \text{ and } i \neq j \\ c'_{G_1}(u_i) & \text{if } e = u_i v_i \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq n. \end{cases}$$

The induced coloring  $c'_H : V(H) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}^*([k+1])$  is then given by  $c'_H(u_i) = c'_{G_1}(u_i)$  and  $c'_H(v_i) = c'_{G_1}(u_i) \cup \{k+1\}$ . Since  $c'_H$  is rainbow, it follows that  $c'_H$  is a strong royal  $(k+1)$ -edge coloring of  $H$ . Thus,  $\text{sroy}(H) \leq k+1 = \text{sroy}(G) + 1$ . Therefore, if  $G$  is a royal-zero graph, then  $G \square K_2$  is a royal-zero graph. ■

The *hypercube*  $Q_k$  is  $K_2$  if  $k = 1$ , while for  $k \geq 2$ ,  $Q_k$  is defined recursively as the Cartesian product  $Q_{k-1} \square K_2$  of  $Q_{k-1}$  and  $K_2$ . Since  $Q_2 = C_4$  is royal-zero by Theorem 3.2.1, the following is a consequence of Proposition 3.2.6.

**Corollary 3.2.7** *For each integer  $k \geq 2$ , the hypercube  $Q_k$  is a royal-zero graph.*

As stated in Proposition 3.2.6, if  $G$  is a royal-zero graph, then  $G \square K_2$  is a royal-zero graph. On the other hand, it is possible that  $G$  is a royal-one graph and  $G \square K_2$  is a royal-zero graph. To see an example of this, we return to the 7-cycle  $C_7$ , which we saw (in Theorem 3.2.1) is a royal-one graph. Figure 3.9 shows a strong royal 4-edge coloring of  $C_7 \square K_2$  and so  $\text{sroy}(C_7) = \text{sroy}(C_7 \square K_2) = 4$ . Thus,  $C_7$

is royal-one, while  $C_7 \square K_2$  is royal-zero. Two other royal-one graphs  $G$  for which  $G \square K_2$  are royal-zero are  $K_5$  and  $K_6$ ; that is,  $\text{sroy}(K_5 \square K_2) = \text{sroy}(K_6 \square K_2) = 4$ . A strong royal 4-edge coloring  $c$  of  $H = K_6 \square K_2$  can be defined as follows. Let  $H_1$  and  $H_2$  be two copies of  $K_6$  in  $H$ , where  $V(H_1) = \{u_1, u_2, \dots, u_6\}$  and  $V(H_2) = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_6\}$  such that  $u_i v_i \in E(H)$ . First, we define the rainbow coloring  $c' : V(H) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}^*([4])$  by

$$\begin{aligned} c'(u_1) &= \{1, 4\}, c'(u_2) = \{1\}, c'(u_3) = \{1, 2, 4\}, \\ c'(u_4) &= \{1, 2, 3\}, c'(u_5) = \{1, 3\}, c'(u_6) = \{1, 2\}, \\ c'(v_1) &= \{4\}, c'(v_2) = \{1, 3, 4\}, c'(v_3) = [4], \\ c'(v_4) &= \{2, 4\}, c'(v_5) = \{3, 4\}, c'(v_6) = \{2, 3, 4\}. \end{aligned}$$

The edge coloring  $c : V(H) \rightarrow \mathcal{P}^*([4])$  is then defined by  $c(xy) = c'(x) \cap c'(y)$  for each edge  $xy \in E(H)$ . Since  $c'$  is the induced vertex coloring of  $c$ , it follows that  $c$  is a strong royal 4-edge coloring of  $H$ . Thus,  $H$  is royal-zero.

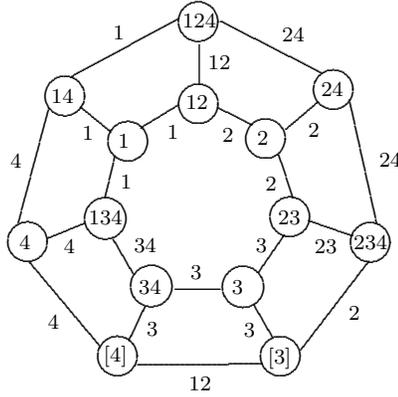


Figure 3.9: A strong royal 4-edge coloring of  $C_7 \square K_2$

As noted in Proposition 3.2.2, the complete graph  $K_7$  is a royal-one graph. However,  $H = K_7 \square K_2$  is royal-one as well. That there is a strong royal 5-edge coloring of  $H$  is straightforward. To show that  $\text{sroy}(K_7 \square K_2) = 5$ , however, it is necessary to show that there is no strong royal 4-edge coloring of  $H$ , for assume that such an edge coloring  $c$  of  $H$  exists. Since the order of  $H$  is 14, the induced vertex colors of  $H$  must consist of 14 elements of  $\mathcal{P}^*([4])$ . In particular, at least three of the four singleton subsets of  $[4]$  must be vertex colors of  $H$ . Suppose that  $H_1$  and  $H_2$  are the two copies of  $K_7$  in the construction of  $H$ . Therefore, at least one of  $H_1$  and  $H_2$  has at least two singleton subsets as its vertex colors, say

$c'(u_1) = \{1\}$  and  $c'(u_2) = \{2\}$  where  $u_1, u_2 \in V(H_1)$ , which is impossible since  $u_1$  and  $u_2$  are adjacent. Hence,  $\text{sroy}(K_7 \square K_2) = 5$ .

### 3.3 Conditions for Royal-One Graphs

We have seen that many graphs are royal-zero graphs. We now present a sufficient condition for a connected graph  $G$  of order  $n \geq 4$  to be a royal-one graph. Let  $k$  be the unique integer such that  $2^{k-1} \leq n \leq 2^k - 1$ . Recall that a graph  $G_k$  of order  $2^k - 1$  can be constructed as follows. The vertices of  $G_k$  are labeled with the  $2^k - 1$  distinct elements of  $\mathcal{P}^*([k])$ . For each vertex  $v$  of  $G_k$ , let  $\ell(v)$  denote its label. Thus,  $\{\ell(v) : v \in V(G_k)\} = \mathcal{P}^*([k])$ . Two vertices  $u$  and  $v$  of  $G_k$  are adjacent in  $G_k$  if and only if  $\ell(u) \cap \ell(v) \neq \emptyset$ . The vertex set  $V(G_k)$  is partitioned into  $k$  subsets  $V_1, V_2, \dots, V_k$  where  $V_i = \{v \in V(G_k) : |\ell(v)| = i\}$  for  $1 \leq i \leq k$ . Therefore,  $G_k[V_k] = K_1$  and  $G_k[V_1] = \overline{K}_k$  is empty. If  $k = 2p + 1$  is odd, then  $G_k[V_{p+1} \cup V_{p+2} \cup \dots \cup V_k] = K_{2^{k-1}}$ . If  $k = 2p$  is even, then let  $V'_p$  be the subset consisting of those elements  $S$  in  $V_p$  for which  $1 \in S$ . Then  $|V'_p| = \frac{1}{2} \binom{k}{p}$  and  $G_k[V'_p \cup V_{p+1} \cup V_{p+2} \cup \dots \cup V_k] = K_{2^{k-1}}$ . Let  $m_k$  be the size of  $G_k$ . The graph  $G_3$  of order  $7 = 2^3 - 1$  has size  $m_3 = 15$  and is shown in Figure 3.10. [Note that this graph is the same graph shown in Figure 2.8.]

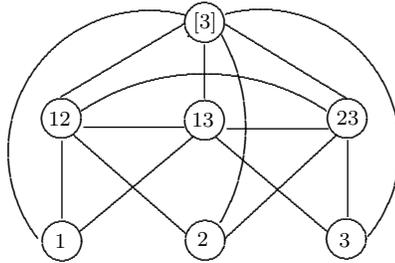


Figure 3.10: The graph  $G_3$  of order  $7 = 2^3 - 1$  and size  $m_3 = 15$

There is an immediate condition under which a connected graph cannot be a royal-zero graph.

**Observation 3.3.1** *Let  $G$  be a connected graph of order  $n \geq 4$  and size  $m$  where  $2^{k-1} \leq n \leq 2^k - 1$  for an integer  $k$ . If  $G$  is not a subgraph of the graph  $G_k$ , then  $\text{sroy}(G) \geq k + 1$ . Consequently, if  $m \geq m_k + 1$ , then  $\text{sroy}(G) \geq k + 1$ .*

Since  $\text{sroy}(T) = 3$  for each tree  $T$  of order  $n$  where  $4 \leq n \leq 7$ , it follows by Observation 2.4.1 that if  $G$  is a connected graph of order  $n$  where  $4 \leq n \leq 7$ , then  $\text{sroy}(G)$  is either 3 or 4. If  $G$  is a connected graph of order 7 that is not isomorphic to a subgraph of  $G_3$  of Figure 2.8, then  $\text{sroy}(G) \neq 3$  and so  $\text{sroy}(G) = 4$ . Since the size of  $G_3$  is 15, it follows that if  $G$  is a connected graph of order 7 with size at least 16, then  $\text{sroy}(G) = 4$ . Figure 3.11 shows the graphs  $H_4, H_5$ , and  $H_6$  of order 4, 5, and 6, respectively, of greatest size that are subgraphs of  $G_3$ . For each graph  $H_i$  where  $i = 4, 5, 6$ , if every edge  $uv$  of  $H_i$  is assigned the color  $c(uv) = \ell(u) \cap \ell(v)$ , then  $c'(v) = \bigcup_{e \in E_{H_i}(v)} c(e) = \ell(v)$ , resulting in a strong royal 3-edge coloring of  $H_i$ . Hence,  $\text{sroy}(H_i) = 3$  for  $i = 4, 5, 6$ . The graph  $H_4 = K_4$ , while  $H_5$  has size 9 and  $H_6$  has size 12. So, if  $G$  is a connected graph of order 5 whose size is at least 10 (that is,  $G = K_5$ ) or if  $G$  is a connected graph of order 6 whose size is at least 13, then  $\text{sroy}(G) = 4$ .

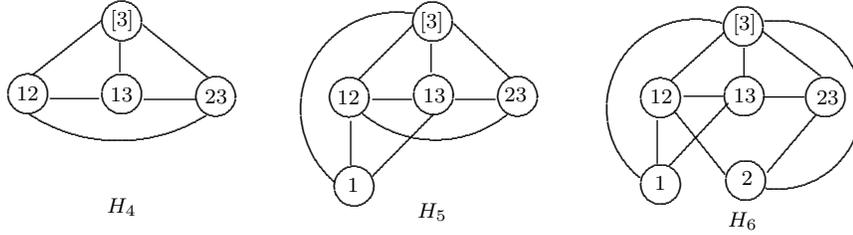


Figure 3.11: Subgraphs of  $G_3$

By Observation 3.3.1, if  $G$  is a connected graph of order  $n \geq 4$  and size  $m$  where  $2^{k-1} \leq n \leq 2^k - 1$  such that  $m > m_k$ , which implies that  $G \not\subseteq G_k$ , then  $\text{sroy}(G) \geq k+1$ . In fact, if  $G$  possesses any property that implies that  $G \not\subseteq G_k$ , then  $\text{sroy}(G) \geq k+1$ . For example, if the order of  $G$  is  $n = 2^k - 1$  and  $\delta(G) \geq \delta(G_k) + 1$  or  $G$  has more than one vertex of degree  $n - 1$ , then  $\text{sroy}(G) \geq k+1$ . On the other hand, even though  $C_7 \subseteq G_3$  (where  $n = 2^3 - 1$  and  $k = 3$ ),  $|E(C_7)| = 7 < m_3$ , and  $\delta(C_7) < \delta(G_3)$ , we saw that  $\text{sroy}(C_7) = 4 = k + 1$ . Furthermore, for every chord  $e$  of  $C_7$ ,  $\text{sroy}(C_7 + e) = 3$  (see Figure 3.12). Consequently, even though one might suspect that  $\text{sroy}(G + uv) \geq \text{sroy}(G)$  for every connected graph  $G$  and every pair  $u, v$  of nonadjacent vertices of  $G$ , such is not the case.

What we have seen is that if  $G$  is a connected graph of order  $n \geq 4$  where  $2^{k-1} \leq n \leq 2^k - 1$  having a sufficiently large size, then  $\text{sroy}(G) \neq k$ . However, if  $G$  is a connected graph of order  $n \geq 4$  where  $2^{k-1} \leq n \leq 2^k - 1$  having a small

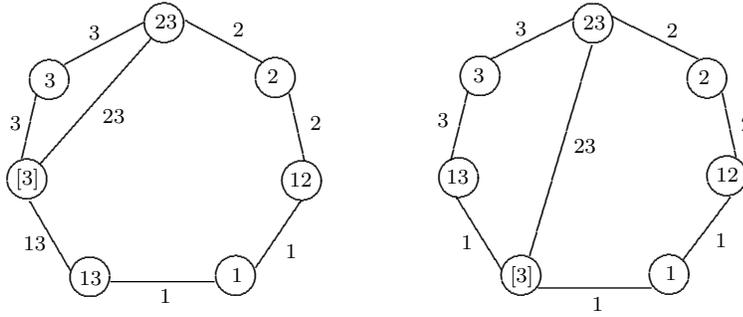


Figure 3.12: Showing that  $\text{sroy}(C_7 + e) = 3$  for each  $e \notin E(C_7)$

size, then we are not guaranteed that  $\text{sroy}(G) = k$ . Indeed, even the strong royal index of trees is in doubt.

If Conjecture 3.1.1 is true, then for every connected graph  $G$  of order  $n \geq 4$  where  $2^{k-1} \leq n \leq 2^k - 1$ , either  $\text{sroy}(G) = k$  or  $\text{sroy}(G) = k+1$ . In order to present a sufficient condition for  $\text{sroy}(G) \neq k$  in terms of the size and minimum degree of  $G$ , we describe an expression for the size  $m_k$  of the graph  $G_k$  (as it is easier in general to compare two numbers than to determine whether a graph contains a subgraph isomorphic to a given graph).

Recall that we label the  $2^k - 1$  vertices of  $G_k$  with the distinct elements of  $\mathcal{P}^*([k])$ . The label of each vertex  $v$  of  $G_k$  is denoted by  $\ell(v)$  and so  $\{\ell(v) : v \in V(G_k)\} = \mathcal{P}^*([k])$ . Let  $\{V_1, V_2, \dots, V_k\}$  be the partition of  $V(G_k)$  described earlier, where then  $V_i = \{v \in V(G_k) : |\ell(v)| = i\}$  for  $1 \leq i \leq k$ . Let  $v \in V_i$  for some integer  $i$  with  $1 \leq i \leq k$ . Then  $\ell(v) = S$  is some  $i$ -element subset of  $[k]$ . There are  $2^i - 1$  nonempty subsets of  $S$  and  $2^{k-i}$  subsets of  $[k] - S$ . For each nonempty subset  $S'$  of  $S$  and each subset  $T$  of  $[k] - S$ , the vertex  $v$  is adjacent to that vertex  $w$  of  $G_k$  for which  $\ell(w) = S' \cup T$ . Since  $v$  is not adjacent to itself, however, it follows that  $\deg_{G_k} v = (2^i - 1)2^{k-i} - 1$ . Furthermore, there are  $\binom{k}{i}$

vertices in  $V_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq k$ . Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned}
m_k &= \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^k \binom{k}{i} [(2^i - 1)2^{k-i} - 1] = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^k \binom{k}{i} (2^k - 2^{k-i} - 1) \\
&= \frac{1}{2} \left[ \sum_{i=1}^k \binom{k}{i} 2^k - \sum_{i=1}^k \binom{k}{i} 2^{k-i} - \sum_{i=1}^k \binom{k}{i} \right] \\
&= \frac{1}{2} \left[ 2^k \sum_{i=1}^k \binom{k}{i} - 2^k \sum_{i=1}^k \binom{k}{i} \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^i - \sum_{i=1}^k \binom{k}{i} \right] \\
&= \frac{1}{2} \left\{ 2^k (2^k - 1) - 2^k \left[ \left(1 + \frac{1}{2}\right)^k - 1 \right] - (2^k - 1) \right\} \\
&= \frac{1}{2} (4^k - 3^k - 2^k + 1).
\end{aligned}$$

In particular, if  $k = 3$ , then the size of  $G_3$  is  $m_3 = 15$ , as we saw in Figure 2.8.

**Proposition 3.3.2** *Let  $G$  be a graph of order  $n \geq 4$  and size  $m$  where  $2^{k-1} \leq n \leq 2^k - 1$  for some integer  $k \geq 3$ . If  $m > \frac{1}{2}(4^k - 3^k - 2^k + 1)$ , then  $\text{sroy}(G) \geq k + 1$ .*

For each integer  $k \geq 3$ , the minimum degree  $\delta(G_k)$  of the graph  $G_k$  is  $2^{k-1} - 1$ . Consequently, if  $G$  is a graph of order  $n \geq 4$  and size  $m$  where  $2^{k-1} \leq n \leq 2^k - 1$  for which  $\delta(G) \geq 2^{k-1}$ , then it may occur that  $m < m_k$  but yet  $G$  is not a subgraph of  $G_k$ , and so (by Observation 3.3.1)  $\text{sroy}(G) \geq k + 1$ . However, in this case, more can be said. It is useful to recall that every path  $P_n$  for  $n \geq 4$  is royal-zero (see [8, 17]).

**Proposition 3.3.3** *Let  $G$  be a connected graph of order  $n \geq 4$  where  $2^{k-1} \leq n \leq 2^k - 1$  for some integer  $k \geq 2$ . If  $\delta(G) \geq 2^{k-1}$ , then  $\text{sroy}(G) = k + 1$ .*

**Proof.** We have already observed that  $\text{sroy}(G) \geq k + 1$  for such a graph. Since  $\delta(G) \geq 2^{k-1}$  and  $n \leq 2^k - 1$ , it follows that  $\delta(G) \geq (n + 1)/2$  and therefore  $G$  has a Hamiltonian path (in fact, a Hamiltonian cycle). Since  $\text{sroy}(P_n) = k$  for every path  $P_n$  of order  $n$ , it follows by Observation 2.4.1 that  $\text{sroy}(G) \leq k + 1$  and so  $\text{sroy}(G) = k + 1$ . ■

### 3.4 Open Questions

We have seen that both  $K_7$  and  $C_7$  (a spanning subgraph, or factor, of  $K_7$ ) are royal-one graphs. The complement  $\overline{C_7}$  of  $C_7$  is a 4-regular graph of order 7 and so it is not a subgraph of the graph  $G_3$  shown in Figure 2.8. Hence,  $\overline{C_7}$  is also a royal-one graph. The size of  $\overline{C_7}$  is 14 which is less than the size 15 of  $G_3$  (the graph of order 7 having the maximum size that is royal-zero). This brings up the problem of determining for each integer  $n \geq 3$ , the minimum size of a graph of order  $n$  that is royal-one. Of course, the minimum size is 7 when  $n = 7$ .

Another related concept is the minimum number  $\chi_{\text{sroy}}(G)$  of elements of the set  $\mathcal{P}^*([k])$  for some integer  $k$  (where  $k$  could be very large) needed to color of the edges of  $G$  so that the resulting vertex coloring is rainbow. So, this concept minimizes *the number of edge colors* in an edge coloring that produces a rainbow vertex coloring. For example, if we only use 5 elements in the set  $\mathcal{P}^*([100])$  as edge colors in an edge coloring for some graph  $G$  to produce a rainbow vertex coloring, then the minimum number of edge colors needed is at most 5 for  $G$  or  $\chi_{\text{sroy}}(G) \leq 5$ . But  $\text{sroy}(G) \leq 100$ . The natural question here is to investigate how the values of these two parameters are related.

Consequently, there is a host of additional problems that arise with strong royal colorings of graphs.

# Chapter 4

## Rainbow Mean Colorings I

**Abstract:** For an edge coloring of a connected graph  $G$  of order 3 or more with positive integers, the chromatic mean of a vertex  $v$  of  $G$  is the sum of the colors of the edges incident with  $v$  divided by the degree of  $v$ . We only consider edge colorings  $c$  for which the chromatic mean of every vertex is a positive integer. If distinct vertices have distinct chromatic means, then  $c$  is called a rainbow mean coloring of  $G$ . The maximum vertex color in a rainbow mean coloring  $c$  of  $G$  is the rainbow chromatic mean index of  $c$  and the rainbow chromatic mean index of the graph  $G$  is the minimum chromatic mean index among all rainbow mean colorings of  $G$ . It is shown that the rainbow chromatic mean index exists for every connected graph of order 3 or more. The rainbow chromatic mean index is determined for paths, cycles, complete graphs, and stars.

### 4.1 Introduction

It is a well-known fact in graph theory that in every nontrivial graph, there are always two vertices having the same degree. Indeed, this fact is listed (indirectly) among the 24 theorems in the article by David Wells [44], asking which of these theorems is the most beautiful. A graph  $G$  was initially called *perfect* and then called *irregular* if the degrees of all vertices of  $G$  are distinct. Consequently, no nontrivial graph is perfect. While there is no nontrivial graph all of whose vertices have distinct degrees, there are nontrivial graphs in which only two vertices have the same degree. In fact, for every integer  $n \geq 2$ , there is exactly one connected graph of order  $n$  having only two vertices of the same degree.

Over the years, “irregular graphs” have been looked at in a variety of ways

(see [14, 15, 16, 23], for example). While no nontrivial graph is irregular, there are irregular multigraphs of each order  $n \geq 3$ . A multigraph  $M$  can be looked at as a labeled graph  $G_M$  where each edge  $uv$  of  $G_M$  is labeled with the positive integer equal to the number of parallel edges joining  $u$  and  $v$  in  $M$ . The degree of  $v$  in  $M$  is then the sum of the labels of the edges in  $G_M$  that are incident with  $v$ .

In 1986, at the 250th Anniversary of Graph Theory Conference held at Indiana University-Purdue University Fort Wayne (now called Purdue University Fort Wayne), the concept of “irregular strength” was introduced by Chartrand, which is the smallest positive integer  $k$  for which an edge labeling from the set  $[k] = \{1, 2, \dots, k\}$  exists giving rise to vertex labels, all of which are distinct (see [21]). Consequently, the problem was to determine the smallest positive integer  $k$  such that each edge of a graph can be labeled with an element of  $[k]$  in such a way that the chromatic sum of all vertices are distinct. Later each edge label was considered as an edge color and each chromatic sum was interpreted as a vertex color so that a “rainbow vertex coloring” of the graph resulted. Rather than coloring edges so that distinct vertices have distinct chromatic sums, we now consider coloring edges so that distinct vertices have distinct integral averages.

## 4.2 Rainbow Mean Index

A *mean coloring* of a connected graph  $G$  of order 3 or more is an edge coloring  $c : E(G) \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  of  $G$  such that for every vertex  $v$  of  $G$ , its vertex color

$$\text{cm}(v) = \frac{\sum_{e \in E_v} c(e)}{\deg v}, \text{ where } E_v \text{ is the set of edges incident with } v,$$

is an integer, called the *chromatic mean* of  $v$ . Clearly, every nontrivial connected graph  $G$  has mean colorings. For example, if every edge of  $G$  is assigned the same positive integer  $a$ , the resulting edge coloring is a mean coloring in which  $\text{cm}(v) = a$  for every vertex  $v$  of  $G$ . If distinct vertices have distinct chromatic means, then the edge coloring  $c$  is called a *rainbow mean coloring* of  $G$ . The following result shows that, for every connected graph of order 3 or more, such an edge coloring always exists.

**Theorem 4.2.1** *Every connected graph of order 3 or more has a rainbow mean coloring.*

**Proof.** Suppose that  $G$  is a connected graph with  $E(G) = \{e_1, e_2, \dots, e_m\}$  where  $m \geq 2$ . Thus,  $\Delta(G) = \Delta \geq 2$ . Let  $k = 2\Delta$  and  $t = \Delta!k^m$ . Define the edge coloring  $c : E(G) \rightarrow [t]$  by

$$c(e_i) = \Delta!k^i \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq m.$$

We show that the coloring  $c$  has the desired property. Assume, to the contrary, that there are two distinct vertices  $u$  and  $v$  of  $G$  such that  $\text{cm}(u) = \text{cm}(v)$ . Let  $\deg u = r$  and  $\deg v = s$ , where  $r \leq s$  say, and let

$$E_u = \{e_{i_1}, e_{i_2}, \dots, e_{i_r}\} \text{ and } E_v = \{e_{j_1}, e_{j_2}, \dots, e_{j_s}\}$$

where  $1 \leq i_1 < i_2 < \dots < i_r \leq m$  and  $1 \leq j_1 < j_2 < \dots < j_s \leq m$ . If  $uv \notin E(G)$ , then  $E_u \cap E_v = \emptyset$ ; while if  $uv \in E(G)$ , then  $E_u \cap E_v = \{uv\}$ . Consequently,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{cm}(u) &= \frac{\Delta!}{r} (k^{i_1} + k^{i_2} + \dots + k^{i_r}) \\ \text{cm}(v) &= \frac{\Delta!}{s} (k^{j_1} + k^{j_2} + \dots + k^{j_s}), \end{aligned}$$

where both  $\text{cm}(u)$  and  $\text{cm}(v)$  are positive integers. We consider two cases, according to whether  $r = s$  or  $r < s$ .

*Case 1.*  $r = s$ . Then  $k^{i_1} + k^{i_2} + \dots + k^{i_r} = k^{j_1} + k^{j_2} + \dots + k^{j_r}$ .

- First, suppose that  $i_r \neq j_r$ . We may assume that  $i_r < j_r$ . Let  $p = j_r \geq 2$ . Since  $k = 2\Delta \geq 4$ , it follows that

$$1 > \frac{1}{k^{p-1}} + \frac{1}{k^{p-2}} + \dots + \frac{1}{k}$$

and so  $k^p > k + k^2 + \dots + k^{p-1}$ . However then,

$$\begin{aligned} k^{j_1} + k^{j_2} + \dots + k^{j_r} &\geq k^{j_r} = k^p > k + k^2 + \dots + k^{p-1} \\ &\geq k^{i_1} + k^{i_2} + \dots + k^{i_r}, \end{aligned}$$

which is a contradiction.

- Next, suppose that  $i_r = j_r$ . Then

$$k^{i_1} + k^{i_2} + \cdots + k^{i_{r-1}} = k^{j_1} + k^{j_2} + \cdots + k^{j_{r-1}}$$

and  $i_{r-1} \neq j_{r-1}$ . We can apply the argument above to produce a contradiction.

*Case 2.*  $r < s$ . Then  $s[k^{i_1} + k^{i_2} + \cdots + k^{i_r}] = r[k^{j_1} + k^{j_2} + \cdots + k^{j_s}]$ .

- First, suppose that  $i_r < j_s$ . Let  $p = j_s \geq 2$ . Since

$$1 > \frac{1}{k^{p-1}} + \frac{1}{k^{p-2}} + \cdots + \frac{1}{k},$$

it follows that

$$2 > \frac{1}{k^{p-1}} + \frac{1}{k^{p-2}} + \cdots + \frac{1}{k} + 1 > \frac{1}{k^{p-2}} + \frac{1}{k^{p-3}} + \cdots + \frac{1}{k} + 1.$$

Hence,  $k = 2\Delta > \Delta \left( \frac{1}{k^{p-2}} + \frac{1}{k^{p-3}} + \cdots + 1 \right)$ . Because  $\Delta \geq s/r$ , it follows that

$$\begin{aligned} k^{j_1} + k^{j_2} + \cdots + k^{j_s} &\geq k^{j_s} = k^p = k(k^{p-1}) \\ &> \Delta \left( \frac{1}{k^{p-2}} + \frac{1}{k^{p-3}} + \cdots + 1 \right) k^{p-1} \\ &= \Delta(k + k^2 + \cdots + k^{p-1}) \\ &\geq \frac{s}{r}(k + k^2 + \cdots + k^{p-1}) \\ &\geq \frac{s}{r}[k^{i_1} + k^{i_2} + \cdots + k^{i_r}], \end{aligned}$$

which is a contradiction.

- Next, suppose that  $i_r \geq j_s$ . The argument in Case 1 shows that

$$k^{i_1} + k^{i_2} + \cdots + k^{i_r} > k^{j_1} + k^{j_2} + \cdots + k^{j_s}.$$

Since  $r < s$ , it follows that  $1 > r/s$  and so

$$k^{i_1} + k^{i_2} + \cdots + k^{i_r} > k^{j_1} + k^{j_2} + \cdots + k^{j_s} > \frac{r}{s}[k^{j_1} + k^{j_2} + \cdots + k^{j_s}],$$

which is a contradiction. ■

For a rainbow mean coloring  $c$  of a graph  $G$ , the maximum vertex color is the *rainbow chromatic mean index* (or simply, the *rainbow mean index*)  $\text{rm}(c)$  of  $c$ . That is,

$$\text{rm}(c) = \max\{\text{cm}(v) : v \in V(G)\}.$$

The *rainbow chromatic mean index* (or the *rainbow mean index*)  $\text{rm}(G)$  of the graph  $G$  itself is defined as

$$\text{rm}(G) = \min\{\text{rm}(c) : c \text{ is a rainbow mean coloring of } G\}.$$

First, we present some useful observations.

**Observation 4.2.2** *If  $G$  is a connected graph of order  $n \geq 3$ , then  $\text{rm}(G) \geq n$ .*

**Observation 4.2.3** *If  $c$  is a rainbow mean coloring of a connected graph  $G$ , then*

$$\sum_{v \in V(G)} \deg v \cdot \text{cm}(v) = 2 \sum_{e \in E(G)} c(e).$$

*Furthermore, if the order of  $G$  is  $n$  and  $\text{rm}(c) = n$ , then  $\sum_{v \in V(G)} \text{cm}(v) = \binom{n+1}{2}$ .*

### 4.3 The Rainbow Mean Index of Paths and Cycles

First, we determine the rainbow mean index of every path  $P_n$  of order  $n \geq 3$ . The path  $P_4$  is a special case.

**Proposition 4.3.1**  $\text{rm}(P_4) = 5$ .

**Proof.** The edge coloring in Figure 4.1 shows that  $\text{rm}(P_4) \leq 5$ . Next, we show that  $\text{rm}(P_4) \geq 5$ . Assume, to the contrary, that there is a rainbow mean coloring  $c$  of  $P_4$  such that  $\text{rm}(c) = 4$ . Let  $P_4 = (v_1, v_2, v_3, v_4)$ . Since  $\{\text{cm}(v_i) : 1 \leq i \leq 4\} = [4]$ , no two edges can be colored the same. Consequently, since only one vertex is colored 1, this implies that  $\text{cm}(v_1) = 1$  or  $\text{cm}(v_4) = 1$ . We may assume that  $\text{cm}(v_1) = 1$  and so  $c(v_1v_2) = 1$ . Hence, the edges of  $P_4$  are colored with distinct odd

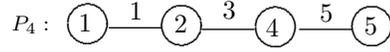


Figure 4.1: A rainbow mean coloring of  $P_4$

integers. If some edge of  $P_4$  is colored 7 or more, then some vertex of  $P_4$  is colored 5 or more, which is impossible. Thus,  $\{c(v_i v_{i+1}) : i = 1, 2, 3\} = \{1, 3, 5\}$  and so  $\{c(v_2 v_3), c(v_3 v_4)\} = \{3, 5\}$ . In either case, it follows that  $\{cm(v_i) : 1 \leq i \leq 4\} \neq [4]$ , a contradiction. Thus,  $rm(P_4) \geq 5$  and so  $rm(P_4) = 5$ . ■

**Theorem 4.3.2** For each integer  $n \geq 3$  and  $n \neq 4$ ,  $rm(P_n) = n$ .

**Proof.** Since  $rm(P_n) \geq n$  for all integers  $n \geq 3$ , it remains to show that there is a rainbow mean coloring  $c$  of  $P_n$  such that  $rm(c) = n$ . First, suppose that  $n \geq 3$  is odd. Define the edge coloring  $c : E(P_n) \rightarrow [n]$  of  $P_n$  by  $c(e) = i$  if  $e$  is incident with  $v_i$  where  $1 \leq i \leq n$  and  $i$  is odd. Figure 4.2 shows such an edge coloring of  $P_n$  for  $n = 3, 5, 7$ . Since  $cm(v_i) = i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq n$ , it follows that  $c$  is a rainbow mean coloring of  $P_n$  with  $rm(c) = n$ . Therefore,  $rm(P_n) = n$  for each odd integer  $n \geq 3$ .

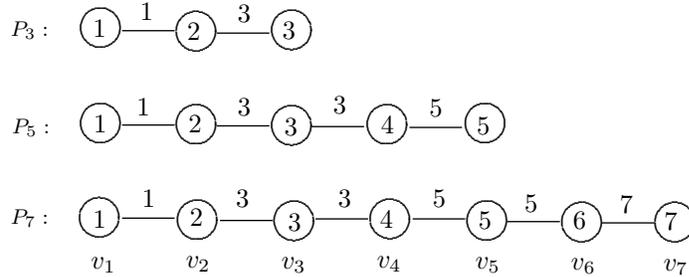


Figure 4.2: Rainbow mean colorings of  $P_3$ ,  $P_5$ , and  $P_7$

We may therefore assume that  $n \geq 6$  is even. Let  $P_n = (v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n)$  and let  $e_i = v_i v_{i+1}$  for  $1 \leq i \leq n - 1$ . Since  $n \geq 6$  is even, it follows that either  $n \equiv 2 \pmod{4}$  or  $n \equiv 0 \pmod{4}$ . We proceed by induction to prove the following statements.

- ★ If  $n \equiv 2 \pmod{4}$ , then there is a rainbow mean coloring  $c_n$  of  $P_n$  such that  $c_n(e_{n-1}) = 3$  and  $rm(c_n) = n$ .
- ★ If  $n \equiv 0 \pmod{4}$  and  $n \geq 8$ , then there is a rainbow mean coloring  $c_n$  of  $P_n$  such that  $c_n(e_{n-1}) = 5$  and  $rm(c_n) = n$ .

The edge colorings of  $P_6$  and  $P_8$  in Figure 4.3 show that the statements are true for  $n = 6, 8$ . Suppose that the statement is true for an arbitrary even integer  $n \geq 6$ . Next, we show that the statement is true for  $n + 4$  by considering two cases, according to whether  $n \equiv 2 \pmod{4}$  or  $n \equiv 0 \pmod{4}$ . We use  $\text{cm}_t(v)$  to denote the chromatic mean of a vertex  $v$  with respect to an edge coloring  $c_t$  of the path  $P_t$  of order  $t$ .

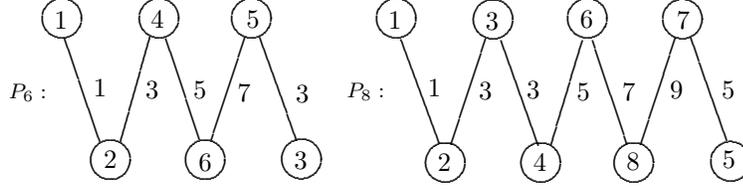


Figure 4.3: Rainbow mean colorings of  $P_6$  and  $P_8$

*Case 1.*  $n \equiv 2 \pmod{4}$ . By the induction hypothesis, there is a rainbow mean coloring  $c_n$  of  $P_n$  such that  $c_n(e_{n-1}) = \text{cm}(v_n, c_n) = 3$  and  $\{\text{cm}(v_i, c_n) : 1 \leq i \leq n\} = [n]$ . We now extend  $c_n$  to an edge coloring  $c_{n+4}$  of  $P_{n+4}$  by defining  $c_{n+4}(e_n) = 2n + 1$ ,  $c_{n+4}(e_{n+1}) = 1$ ,  $c_{n+4}(e_{n+2}) = 2n + 5$ , and  $c_{n+4}(e_{n+3}) = 3$ . Then  $\text{cm}_{n+4}(v_i) = \text{cm}_n(v_i)$  for  $1 \leq i \leq n - 1$  and  $\text{cm}_{n+4}(v_n) = n + 2$ ,  $\text{cm}_{n+4}(v_{n+1}) = n + 1$ ,  $\text{cm}_{n+4}(v_{n+2}) = n + 3$ ,  $\text{cm}_{n+4}(v_{n+3}) = n + 4$ , and  $\text{cm}_{n+4}(v_{n+4}) = 3$ . It follows that  $\{\text{cm}_{n+4}(v_i) : 1 \leq i \leq n + 4\} = [n + 4]$ . Figure 4.4 illustrates the construction of such an edge coloring for  $n = 6$ , where a rainbow mean coloring  $c_{10}$  of  $P_{10}$  is constructed from the given rainbow mean coloring  $c_6$  of  $P_6$ .

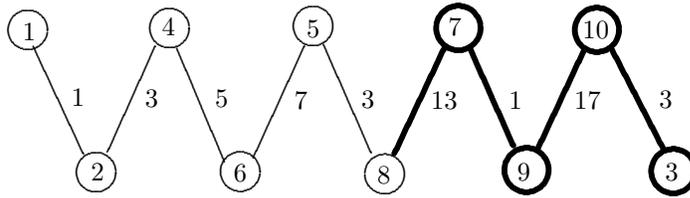


Figure 4.4: The construction of the rainbow mean coloring  $c_{10}$  of  $P_{10}$  in Case 1

*Case 2.*  $n \equiv 0 \pmod{4}$  and  $n \geq 8$ . By the induction hypothesis, there is a rainbow mean coloring  $c_n$  of  $P_n$  such that  $c_n(e_{n-1}) = \text{cm}(v_n, c_n) = 5$  and  $\{\text{cm}(v_i, c_n) : 1 \leq i \leq n\} = [n]$ . We now extend  $c_n$  to an edge coloring  $c_{n+4}$  of  $P_{n+4}$  by defining  $c_{n+4}(e_n) = 2n - 3$ ,  $c_{n+4}(e_{n+1}) = 7$ ,  $c_{n+4}(e_{n+2}) = 2n + 1$ , and  $c_{n+4}(e_{n+3}) = 5$ . Then  $\text{cm}_{n+4}(v_i) = \text{cm}_n(v_i)$  for  $1 \leq i \leq n - 1$  and  $\text{cm}_{n+4}(v_n) =$

$n + 1$ ,  $\text{cm}_{n+4}(v_{n+1}) = n + 2$ ,  $\text{cm}_{n+4}(v_{n+2}) = n + 4$ ,  $\text{cm}_{n+4}(v_{n+3}) = n + 3$ , and  $\text{cm}_{n+4}(v_{n+4}) = 5$ . Thus,  $\{\text{cm}_{n+4}(v_i) : 1 \leq i \leq n + 4\} = [n + 4]$ . Figure 4.5 illustrates the construction of such an edge coloring for  $n = 8$ , where a rainbow mean coloring  $c_{12}$  of  $P_{12}$  is constructed from the given rainbow mean coloring  $c_8$  of  $P_8$ . ■

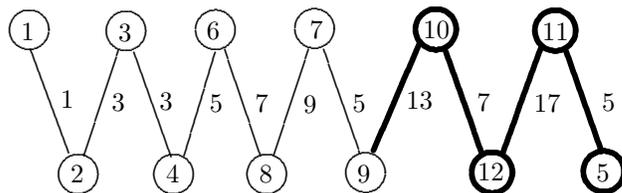


Figure 4.5: The construction of the a rainbow mean coloring  $c_{12}$  of  $P_{12}$  in Case 2

Next, we determine the rainbow mean index of every cycle.

**Theorem 4.3.3** For each integer  $n \geq 4$ ,

$$\text{rm}(C_n) = \begin{cases} n & \text{if } n \equiv 0, 1 \pmod{4} \\ n + 1 & \text{if } n \equiv 2, 3 \pmod{4} \end{cases}$$

**Proof.** We consider two cases, according to whether  $n \equiv 0, 1 \pmod{4}$  or  $n \equiv 2, 3 \pmod{4}$ .

*Case 1.*  $n \equiv 0 \pmod{4}$  or  $n \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$ . In this case, it suffices to show that there is a rainbow mean coloring  $c$  of  $C_n$  such that  $\text{rm}(c) = n$ . First, suppose that  $n \equiv 0 \pmod{4}$ . Then  $n = 4k$  for some positive integer  $k$ . Let  $C_{4k}$  be the cycle obtained from the paths  $P = (u_1, u_2, \dots, u_{2k})$  and  $P' = (v_1, v_2, \dots, v_{2k})$  by adding the two edges  $u_1v_1$  and  $u_{2k}v_{2k}$ . The edge coloring  $c : E(C_{4k}) \rightarrow [4k + 1]$  is defined by

$$c(e) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } e = u_1v_1 \\ 4k + 1 & \text{if } e = u_{2k}v_{2k} \\ 2i + 1 & \text{if } e = u_iu_{i+1} \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq 2k - 1 \\ 2i - 1 & \text{if } e \in E(P') \text{ and } e \text{ is incident with } v_i \text{ where} \\ & i \text{ is odd and } 1 \leq i \leq 2k - 1. \end{cases}$$

A rainbow mean coloring  $c_n$  of  $C_n$  is given in Figure 4.6 for  $n = 4, 8, 12$ . Note that there is exactly one edge  $e = uv$  colored  $n+1$  in  $C_n$  and  $\{\text{cm}(u), \text{cm}(v)\} = \{n-1, n\}$ .

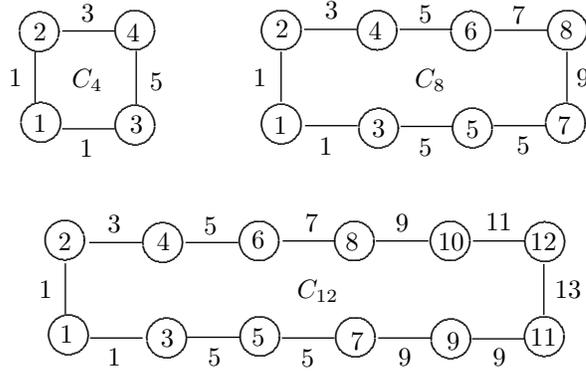


Figure 4.6: Rainbow mean colorings of  $C_4$ ,  $C_8$ , and  $C_{12}$

Then  $cm(u_i) = 2i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq 2k$  and  $cm(v_i) = 2i - 1$  for  $1 \leq i \leq 2k$ . Since  $cm$  is rainbow,  $rm(C_{4k}) = 4k$  for each positive integer  $k$ .

Next, suppose that  $n \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$ . Thus,  $n = 4k + 1$  where  $k \in \mathbb{N}$ . Then  $C_n$  can be obtained by subdividing exactly one edge of  $C_{n-1}$ , where then  $n - 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{4}$ . A rainbow mean coloring  $c_n$  of  $C_n$  can be constructed from the rainbow mean coloring  $c_{n-1}$  of  $C_{n-1}$  described above by subdividing the edge  $u_{2k}v_{2k}$  colored  $n$  by a new vertex  $w$  and coloring the two edges  $u_{2k}w$  and  $wv_{2k}$  in  $C_n$  by  $n$ . This is illustrated in Figure 4.7 for  $n = 5, 9, 13$ . Therefore,  $rm(C_{4k+1}) = 4k + 1$  for each positive integer  $k$ .

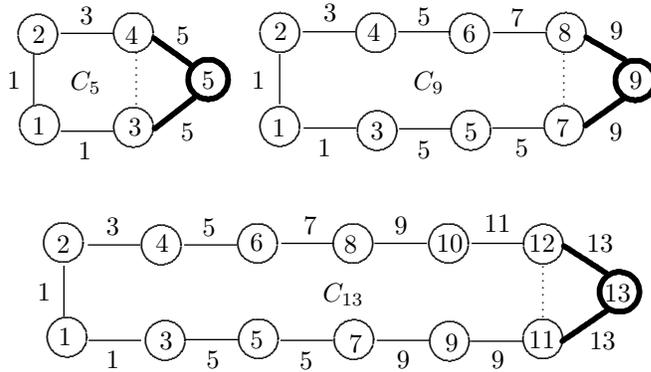


Figure 4.7: Rainbow mean colorings of  $C_5$ ,  $C_9$ , and  $C_{13}$

*Case 2.*  $n \equiv 2 \pmod{4}$  or  $n \equiv 3 \pmod{4}$ . Let  $C = (v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n, v_{n+1} = v_1)$  where  $e_i = v_i v_{i+1}$  for  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . First, we show that  $rm(C_n) \geq n + 1$ . Assume, to the contrary, that  $rm(C_n) = n$ . Then there is a rainbow mean coloring  $c$  of  $C_n$  such that  $\{cm(v) : v \in V(C_n)\} = [n]$ . Since the color of some vertex of  $C_n$  is 1,

the color of each edge incident with said vertex is also 1. This implies that  $c(e)$  is odd for each  $e \in E(C_n)$ . Thus,  $c(e_i) = 2a_i + 1$  for some nonnegative integer  $a_i$  where  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . First, suppose that  $n \equiv 2 \pmod{4}$ . Then  $n = 4k + 2$  for some positive integer  $k$ . We have that

$$2 \sum_{v \in V(C_n)} \text{cm}(v) = 2 \binom{4k+3}{2} = (4k+3)(4k+2) = 16k^2 + 20k + 6.$$

Hence,  $2 \sum_{v \in V(C_n)} \text{cm}(v) \equiv 2 \pmod{4}$ . On the other hand,

$$\begin{aligned} 2 \sum_{v \in V(C_n)} \text{cm}(v) &= 2 \sum_{i=1}^{4k+2} c(e_i) = 2 \sum_{i=1}^{4k+2} (2a_i + 1) = \sum_{i=1}^{4k+2} (4a_i + 2) \\ &= \left[ \sum_{i=1}^{4k+2} 4a_i \right] + (8k + 4) \equiv 0 \pmod{4}, \end{aligned}$$

which is impossible. Next, suppose that  $n \equiv 3 \pmod{4}$ . Thus,  $n = 4k + 3$  for some positive integer  $k$ . Then

$$2 \sum_{v \in V(C_n)} \text{cm}(v) = 2 \binom{4k+4}{2} = (4k+4)(4k+3) = 4(k+1)(4k+3).$$

Hence,  $2 \sum_{v \in V(C_n)} \text{cm}(v) \equiv 0 \pmod{4}$ . Contrariwise,

$$\begin{aligned} 2 \sum_{v \in V(C_n)} \text{cm}(v) &= 2 \sum_{i=1}^{4k+3} c(e_i) = 2 \sum_{i=1}^{4k+3} (2a_i + 1) = \sum_{i=1}^{4k+3} (4a_i + 2) \\ &= \left[ \sum_{i=1}^{4k+3} 4a_i \right] + (8k + 6) \equiv 2 \pmod{4}, \end{aligned}$$

which is impossible. Therefore,  $\text{rm}(C_n) \geq n + 1$  if  $n \equiv 2 \pmod{4}$  or  $n \equiv 3 \pmod{4}$ .

It remains to show that there exists a rainbow mean coloring  $c$  of  $C_n$  such that  $\text{rm}(c) = n + 1$ . First, suppose that  $n = 4k + 2$  for some positive integer  $k$ . Define  $c : E(C_n) \rightarrow [n + 1]$  by

$$c(e) = \begin{cases} i & \text{if } e \text{ is incident with } v_i, i \text{ is odd and } i \in [1, 2k - 1] \\ i + 2 & \text{if } e \text{ is incident with } v_i, i \text{ is odd and } i \in [2k + 1, n - 1] \end{cases}$$

Consequently, the chromatic means of the vertices of  $C_n$  are given by

$$\text{cm}(v_i) = \begin{cases} i & \text{if } i \text{ is odd and } i \in [1, 2k - 1] \\ i + 2 & \text{if } i \text{ is odd and } i \in [2k + 1, n - 1] \\ i & \text{if } i \text{ is even, } i \in [2, 2k - 2] \text{ and } k \geq 2 \\ 2k + 1 & \text{if } i = 2k \\ i + 2 & \text{if } i \text{ is even and } i \in [2k + 2, n - 2] \\ 2k + 2 & \text{if } i = n. \end{cases}$$

This is illustrated in Figure 4.8 for  $C_{18}$  where  $k = 4$ .

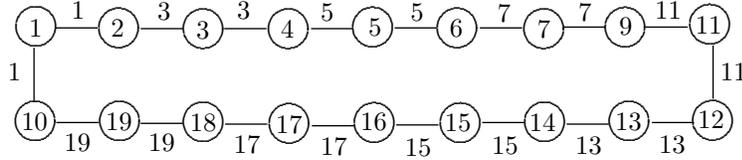


Figure 4.8: A rainbow mean coloring of  $C_{18}$

Next, suppose that  $n \equiv 3 \pmod{4}$  and so  $n + 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{4}$ . Then  $C_n$  can be obtained from  $C_{n+1}$  (colored as described above) by deleting a vertex  $v$  and joining the two neighbors  $u$  and  $w$  of  $v$  by the edge  $uw$ . A rainbow mean coloring  $c_n$  of  $C_n$  with  $\text{rm}(c_n) = n + 1$  can be constructed from the rainbow mean coloring  $c_{n+1}$  of  $C_{n+1}$  with  $\text{rm}(c_{n+1}) = n + 1$  in Case 1 by deleting the vertex  $v$  colored 1 and coloring the edge  $uw$  with 1. This is illustrated in Figure 4.7 for  $n = 7, 11$ . ■

## 4.4 The Rainbow Mean Index of Complete Graphs

Let  $G$  be a connected graph of order  $n \geq 3$  with  $V(G) = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}$  and let  $c : E(G) \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  be an edge coloring of  $G$ . The *matrix representation*  $M$  of  $G$  with

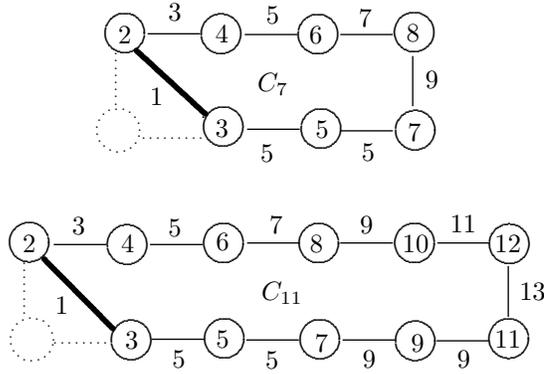


Figure 4.9: Rainbow mean colorings of  $C_7$  and  $C_{11}$

the edge coloring  $c$  is the  $n \times n$  matrix  $[m_{i,j}]$  where

$$m_{i,j} = \begin{cases} c(v_i v_j) & \text{if } 1 \leq i \neq j \leq n \\ 0 & \text{if } 1 \leq i = j \leq n. \end{cases}$$

There are several observations that can be made about the matrix representation  $M$  of a graph  $G$  of order  $n$  with an edge coloring  $c$ . First, all entries along the main diagonal of  $M$  are 0 since no vertex of  $G$  is adjacent to itself. Second,  $M$  is a symmetric matrix, that is, row  $i$  of  $M$  is identical to column  $i$  of  $M$  for every integer  $i$  with  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . Also, if we were to add the entries in row  $i$  (equivalently, in column  $i$ ), then we obtain  $\deg v_i \cdot \text{cm}(v_i)$  for  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . Using this framework, we determine the rainbow mean index for complete graphs. We begin with the complete graphs  $K_n$  where either  $n$  is odd or  $n$  is divisible by 4.

**Theorem 4.4.1** *For an integer  $n \geq 4$  with  $n \equiv 0, 1, 3 \pmod{4}$ ,  $\text{rm}(K_n) = n$ .*

**Proof.** By Observation 4.2.2, it suffices to show that there is a rainbow mean coloring of  $K_n$  having rainbow mean index  $n$ . We consider three cases.

*Case 1.*  $n \geq 4$  and  $n \equiv 0 \pmod{4}$ . Thus,  $n = 4k$  for some positive integer  $k$ . In order to describe a rainbow mean coloring  $c_n$  of  $K_n$  with  $\text{rm}(c_n) = n$ , we construct an  $n \times n$  symmetric matrix  $M_n$ . First, we define, recursively, a sequence  $B_1, B_2, \dots, B_k$  of  $4 \times 4$  symmetric matrices. For  $a = n - 1$ , let

$$B = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & a & a & 2a \\ a & 0 & 2a & a \\ a & 2a & 0 & a \\ 2a & a & a & 0 \end{bmatrix} \text{ and } B_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & a+1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 2a+1 \\ 1 & a+1 & 2a+1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

For  $2 \leq i \leq k$ , define  $B_i = B_{i-1} + B = B_1 + (i-1)B$ . Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} B_i &= B_1 + (i-1)B \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & a+1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 2a+1 \\ 1 & a+1 & 2a+1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 & (i-1)a & (i-1)a & 2(i-1)a \\ (i-1)a & 0 & 2(i-1)a & (i-1)a \\ (i-1)a & 2(i-1)a & 0 & (i-1)a \\ 2(i-1)a & (i-1)a & (i-1)a & 0 \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} 0 & (i-1)a+1 & (i-1)a+1 & 2(i-1)a+1 \\ (i-1)a+1 & 0 & 2(i-1)a+1 & ia+1 \\ (i-1)a+1 & 2(i-1)a+1 & 0 & (i+1)a+1 \\ 2(i-1)a+1 & ia+1 & (i+1)a+1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned}$$

To describe the  $n \times n$  matrix  $M_n$ , we begin with a  $k \times k$  matrix  $A = [a_{i,j}]$  and then replace the entry  $a_{i,i}$  on the main diagonal of  $A$  by the  $4 \times 4$  matrix  $B_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq k$  and each entry off the main diagonal of  $A$  by the  $4 \times 4$  matrix  $J$ , each of whose entries is 1. That is,  $M_n = [M_{i,j}]$  is an  $n \times n$  matrix, where  $M_{i,j}$  is a  $4 \times 4$  matrix such that

$$M_{i,j} = \begin{cases} B_i & \text{if } 1 \leq i = j \leq k \\ J & \text{if } 1 \leq i \neq j \leq k. \end{cases}$$

Thus,

$$M_4 = B_1, M_8 = \begin{bmatrix} B_1 & J \\ J & B_2 \end{bmatrix}, \text{ and } M_{12} = \begin{bmatrix} B_1 & J & J \\ J & B_2 & J \\ J & J & B_3 \end{bmatrix}.$$

If we were to add the entries in row  $i$  (or in column  $i$ ) in  $M_n$ , then we obtain  $ia$  for  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . That is, if  $M_n = [m_{i,j}]$ , then

$$\sum_{j=1}^n m_{i,j} = ia = i(n-1) \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq n. \quad (4.1)$$

We now define an edge coloring  $c : E(K_n) \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  by  $c(v_i v_j) = m_{i,j}$  for each pair  $i, j$  of integers with  $1 \leq i \leq j \leq n$  and  $i \neq j$ . Since  $\text{cm}(v_i) = \frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{j=1}^n m_{i,j} = i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq n$  by (4.1), it follows that  $c$  is a rainbow mean coloring of  $K_n$  with  $\text{rm}(c) = n$ . For example,

$$M_4 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 4 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 7 \\ 1 & 4 & 7 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \text{ and } M_8 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 8 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 15 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 8 & 15 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 8 & 8 & 15 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 8 & 0 & 15 & 15 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 8 & 15 & 0 & 22 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 15 & 15 & 22 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

The matrices  $M_4$  and  $M_8$  give rise to rainbow mean colorings of  $K_4$  and  $K_8$  as shown in Figure 4.10, respectively, where each edge drawn in a thin line is colored by 1.

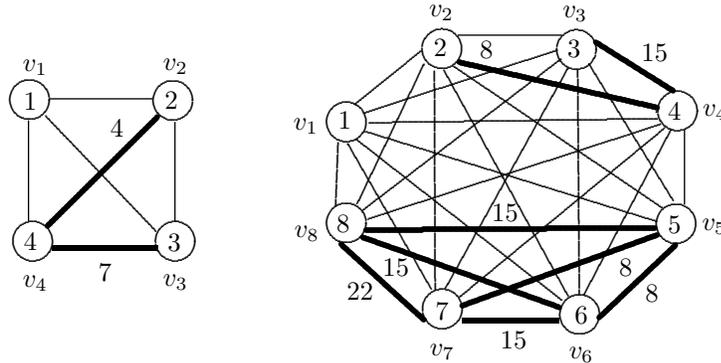


Figure 4.10: Rainbow mean colorings of  $K_4$  and  $K_8$

*Case 2.*  $n \geq 5$  and  $n \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$ . Then  $n = 4k + 1$  for some positive integer  $k$ . First, we define, recursively, a sequence  $B_1, B_2, \dots, B_k$  of symmetric matrices, where  $B_1$  is a  $5 \times 5$  matrix and  $B_i$  is a  $4 \times 4$  matrix for  $2 \leq i \leq k$ . For  $a = n - 1$ , define

$$B_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & a+1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & a+1 & 0 & 1 & a+1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 3a+1 \\ 1 & 1 & a+1 & 3a+1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \text{ and}$$

$$B_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 2a+1 & a+1 & 2a+1 \\ 2a+1 & 0 & 2a+1 & 2a+1 \\ a+1 & 2a+1 & 0 & 4a+1 \\ 2a+1 & 2a+1 & 4a+1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

For  $3 \leq i \leq k$ , define

$$B_i = B_{i-1} + B = B_2 + (i-2)B,$$

where

$$B = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & a & a & 2a \\ a & 0 & 2a & a \\ a & 2a & 0 & a \\ 2a & a & a & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

was defined in Case 1. To describe the  $n \times n$  matrix  $M_n$ , we begin with a  $k \times k$  matrix  $A = [a_{i,j}]$  and then replace the entry  $a_{i,i}$  on the main diagonal of  $A$  by the matrix  $B_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq k$  and each entry off the main diagonal of  $A$  by the matrix  $J$ , each of whose entries is 1. Thus,  $a_{1,1}$  is replaced by the  $5 \times 5$  matrix  $B_1$  and  $a_{i,i}$  for  $2 \leq i \leq k$  is replaced by the  $4 \times 4$  matrix  $B_i$ . That is,  $M_n = [M_{i,j}]$  is an  $n \times n$  matrix, where

$$M_{i,j} = \begin{cases} B_i & \text{if } 1 \leq i = j \leq k \\ J & \text{if } 1 \leq i \neq j \leq k. \end{cases}$$

Thus,

$$M_5 = B_1, M_9 = \begin{bmatrix} B_1 & J \\ J & B_2 \end{bmatrix}, \text{ and } M_{13} = \begin{bmatrix} B_1 & J & J \\ J & B_2 & J \\ J & J & B_3 \end{bmatrix}.$$

In particular,

$$M_5 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 5 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 5 & 0 & 1 & 5 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 13 \\ 1 & 1 & 5 & 13 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \text{ and } M_9 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 9 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 9 & 0 & 1 & 9 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 25 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 9 & 25 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 17 & 9 & 17 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 17 & 0 & 17 & 17 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 9 & 17 & 0 & 33 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 17 & 17 & 33 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

We now define an edge coloring  $c : E(K_n) \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  by  $c(v_i v_j) = m_{i,j}$  for each pair  $i, j$  of integers with  $1 \leq i \leq j \leq n$  and  $i \neq j$ . Since

$$\text{cm}(v_i) = \frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{j=1}^n m_{i,j} = i$$

for  $1 \leq i \leq n$ , it follows that  $c$  is a rainbow mean coloring of  $K_n$  with  $\text{rm}(c) = n$ . For example, the matrices  $M_5$  and  $M_9$  give rise to rainbow mean colorings of  $K_5$  and  $K_9$  as shown in Figure 4.11, respectively, where again each edge drawn in a thin line is colored by 1.

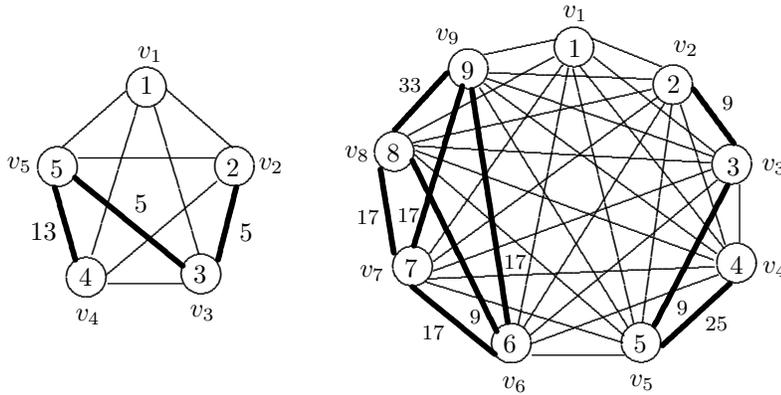


Figure 4.11: Rainbow mean colorings of  $K_5$  and  $K_9$

*Case 3.*  $n \geq 7$  and  $n \equiv 3 \pmod{4}$ . Thus,  $n = 4k + 3$  for some positive integer  $k$ . Again, we construct an  $n \times n$  symmetric matrix  $M_n$ . For  $a = \frac{n-1}{2}$ , let

$$C = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 2a & 2a & 4a \\ 2a & 0 & 4a & 2a \\ 2a & 4a & 0 & 2a \\ 4a & 2a & 2a & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

First, we define, recursively, a sequence  $C_1, C_2, \dots, C_k$  of symmetric matrices, where  $C_1$  is a  $7 \times 7$  matrix and  $C_i$  is a  $4 \times 4$  matrix for  $2 \leq i \leq k$ . Define

$$C_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 2a+1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 2a+1 & 2a+1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 2a+1 & 2a+1 & 2a+1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 2a+1 & 0 & 3a+1 & 3a+1 \\ 1 & 1 & 2a+1 & 2a+1 & 3a+1 & 0 & 3a+1 \\ 1 & 2a+1 & 2a+1 & 2a+1 & 3a+1 & 3a+1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \text{ and}$$

$$C_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 3a+1 & 5a+1 & 6a+1 \\ 3a+1 & 0 & 6a+1 & 7a+1 \\ 5a+1 & 6a+1 & 0 & 7a+1 \\ 6a+1 & 7a+1 & 7a+1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

For  $3 \leq i \leq k$ , define  $C_i = C_{i-1} + C = C_2 + (i-2)C$ . To describe the  $n \times n$  matrix  $M_n$ , we begin with a  $k \times k$  matrix  $A = [a_{i,j}]$  and then replace the entry  $a_{i,i}$  on the main diagonal of  $A$  by the matrix  $C_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq k$  and each entry off the main diagonal of  $A$  by the matrix  $J$ , each of whose entries is 1. That is,  $M_n = [M_{i,j}]$  is an  $n \times n$  matrix, where

$$M_{i,j} = \begin{cases} C_i & \text{if } 1 \leq i = j \leq k \\ J & \text{if } 1 \leq i \neq j \leq k. \end{cases}$$

Thus,  $M_7 = C_1$  where  $a = 3$ ,  $M_{11} = \begin{bmatrix} C_1 & J \\ J & C_2 \end{bmatrix}$ , where  $a = 5$ , and

$$M_{15} = \begin{bmatrix} C_1 & J & J \\ J & C_2 & J \\ J & J & C_3 \end{bmatrix}$$

where  $a = 7$ . In particular,  $M_7 =$  
$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 7 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 7 & 7 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 7 & 7 & 7 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 7 & 0 & 10 & 10 \\ 1 & 1 & 7 & 7 & 10 & 0 & 10 \\ 1 & 7 & 7 & 7 & 10 & 10 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$
 and

$$M_{11} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 11 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 11 & 11 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 11 & 11 & 11 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 11 & 0 & 16 & 16 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 11 & 11 & 16 & 0 & 16 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 11 & 11 & 11 & 16 & 16 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 16 & 26 & 31 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 16 & 0 & 31 & 36 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 26 & 31 & 0 & 36 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 31 & 36 & 36 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

We now define a rainbow mean coloring  $c : E(K_n) \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  by  $c(v_i v_j) = m_{i,j}$  for each pair  $i, j$  of integers with  $1 \leq i \leq j \leq n$  and  $i \neq j$ . For example, the matrix  $M_7$  gives rise to the rainbow mean coloring of  $K_7$  as shown in Figure 4.11, where again each edge drawn in a thin line is colored by 1. Since  $\text{rm}(c) = n$ , it follows that  $\text{rm}(K_n) = n$  for each integer  $n \geq 7$  with  $n \equiv 3 \pmod{4}$ . ■

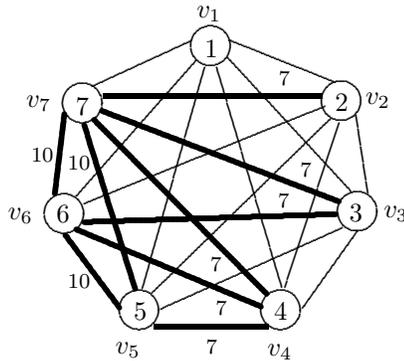


Figure 4.12: A rainbow mean coloring of  $K_7$

The rainbow mean index of each remaining complete graph of order  $n \geq 3$  is  $n + 1$ .

**Theorem 4.4.2** For an integer  $n \geq 6$  with  $n \equiv 2 \pmod{4}$ ,  $\text{rm}(K_n) = n + 1$ .

**Proof.** Since  $n \geq 6$  and  $n \equiv 2 \pmod{4}$ , it follows that  $n = 4k + 2$  for some positive integer  $k$ . First, we show that  $\text{rm}(K_n) \geq n + 1$ . Assume, to the contrary, that there is a rainbow mean coloring  $c$  of  $K_n$  with  $\text{rm}(c) = n$ . Since

$$\{\text{cm}(v) : v \in V(K_n)\} = [n]$$

for the coloring  $c$ , by Observation 4.2.3 we have that

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{e \in E(K_n)} 2c(e) &= (n-1) \sum_{v \in V(K_n)} \text{cm}(v) \\ &= (n-1) \binom{n+1}{2} = (2k+1)(4k+1)(4k+3) \end{aligned}$$

is an odd integer, a contradiction. Therefore,  $\text{rm}(K_n) \geq n + 1$ .

It remains to show that there is a rainbow mean coloring  $c_n$  of  $K_n$  with  $\text{rm}(c_n) = n + 1$ . In order to do this, we construct an  $n \times n$  symmetric matrix  $M_n$  using a sequence  $A_1, A_2, \dots, A_k$  of symmetric matrices, where  $A_1$  is a  $6 \times 6$  matrix and  $A_i$  is a  $4 \times 4$  matrix for  $2 \leq i \leq k$ . For  $a = n - 1$ , let

$$B = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & a & a & 2a \\ a & 0 & 2a & a \\ a & 2a & 0 & a \\ 2a & a & a & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Define

$$A_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & a+1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & a+1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & a+1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & a+1 & 2a+1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & a+1 & 0 & 3a+1 \\ 1 & 1 & a+1 & 2a+1 & 3a+1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \text{ and}$$

$$A_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & a+1 & 3a+1 & 3a+1 \\ a+1 & 0 & 3a+1 & 4a+1 \\ 3a+1 & 3a+1 & 0 & 3a+1 \\ 3a+1 & 4a+1 & 3a+1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

For  $3 \leq i \leq k$ , define

$$A_i = A_{i-1} + B = A_2 + (i - 2)B.$$

To describe the  $n \times n$  matrix  $M_n$ , we begin with a  $k \times k$  matrix  $A = [a_{i,j}]$  and then replace the entry  $a_{i,i}$  on the main diagonal of  $A$  by the matrix  $A_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq k$  and each entry off the main diagonal of  $A$  by the matrix  $J$ , each of whose entries is 1. Thus,  $a_{1,1}$  is replaced by the  $6 \times 6$  matrix  $A_1$  and  $a_{i,i}$  for  $2 \leq i \leq k$  is replaced by the  $4 \times 4$  matrix  $A_i$ . That is,  $M_n = [M_{i,j}]$  is an  $n \times n$  matrix where

$$M_{i,j} = \begin{cases} A_i & \text{if } 1 \leq i = j \leq k \\ J & \text{if } 1 \leq i \neq j \leq k. \end{cases}$$

Thus,  $M_6 = A_1$ ,  $M_{10} = \begin{bmatrix} A_1 & J \\ J & A_2 \end{bmatrix}$  and  $M_{14} = \begin{bmatrix} A_1 & J & J \\ J & A_2 & J \\ J & J & A_3 \end{bmatrix}$ . In particular,

$$M_6 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 6 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 6 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 6 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 6 & 11 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 6 & 0 & 16 \\ 1 & 1 & 6 & 11 & 16 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \text{ and } M_{10} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 10 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 10 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 10 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 10 & 19 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 10 & 0 & 28 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 10 & 19 & 28 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 10 & 28 & 28 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 10 & 0 & 28 & 37 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 28 & 28 & 0 & 28 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 28 & 37 & 28 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

We now define a rainbow mean coloring  $c : E(K_n) \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  by  $c(v_i v_j) = m_{i,j}$  for each pair  $i, j$  of integers with  $1 \leq i \leq j \leq n$  and  $i \neq j$ . For example, the matrix  $M_6$  gives rise to the rainbow mean coloring of  $K_6$  as shown in Figure 4.13, where again each edge drawn in a thin line is colored by 1. Since  $\text{rm}(c) = n + 1$ , it follows that  $\text{rm}(K_n) = n + 1$  for each integer  $n \geq 6$  with  $n \equiv 2 \pmod{4}$ .  $\blacksquare$

From Theorems 4.4.1 and 4.4.2, we then have the following result.

**Corollary 4.4.3** *For an integer  $n \geq 3$ ,*

$$\text{rm}(K_n) = \begin{cases} n & \text{if } n \geq 4 \text{ and } n \equiv 0, 1, 3 \pmod{4} \\ n + 1 & \text{if } n = 3 \text{ or } n \equiv 2 \pmod{4}. \end{cases}$$

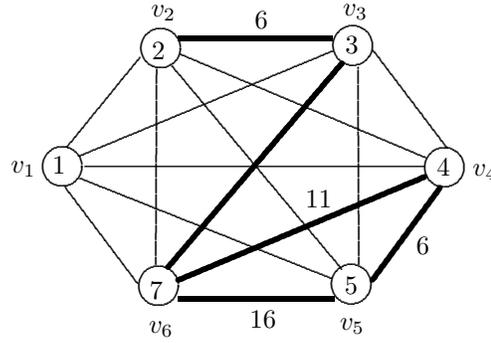


Figure 4.13: A rainbow mean coloring of  $K_6$

## 4.5 The Rainbow Mean Index of Stars

For each connected graph  $G$  of order  $n \geq 3$  that we have considered thus far, either  $\text{rm}(G) = n$  or  $\text{rm}(G) = n + 1$ . While this observation may suggest a conjecture, the following result indicates that the value of  $\text{rm}(G)$  for a connected graph  $G$  of order  $n \geq 3$  can be one of at least *three* integers.

**Theorem 4.5.1** *If  $G$  is a star of order  $n \geq 3$ , then*

$$\text{rm}(G) = \begin{cases} n & \text{if } n \text{ is odd} \\ n + 2 & \text{if } n \text{ is even.} \end{cases}$$

**Proof.** Let  $G = K_{1,n-1}$  where  $V(G) = \{v, v_1, v_2, \dots, v_{n-1}\}$  and  $\deg v = n - 1$ . First, suppose that  $n$  is odd. Thus,  $n = 2t + 1$  for some positive integer  $t$ . Define the coloring  $c : E(G) \rightarrow [n]$  by  $c(vv_i) = i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq t$  and  $c(vv_i) = i + 1$  for  $t + 1 \leq i \leq 2t$ . Since  $\text{cm}(v) = \frac{1}{2t} [\sum_{i=1}^{2t+1} i - (t + 1)] = t + 1$  and  $\text{cm}(v_i) = c(vv_i)$  for  $1 \leq i \leq 2t$ , it follows that  $c$  is a rainbow mean coloring with  $\text{rm}(c) = n$ . Therefore,  $\text{rm}(G) = n$  if  $n$  is odd.

Next, suppose that  $n \geq 4$  is even. Then  $n = 2t$  for some integer  $t \geq 2$ . First, we show that there is a rainbow mean coloring  $c$  of  $G$  with  $\text{rm}(c) = n + 2$ . Define  $c : E(G) \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  such that  $\{c(vv_i) : 1 \leq i \leq 2t - 1\} = [2t + 2] - \{t + 1, t + 2, 2t + 1\}$ .

Since

$$\begin{aligned} \text{cm}(v) &= \frac{1}{2t-1} \sum_{i=1}^{2t-1} c(vv_i) = \frac{1}{2t-1} \left[ \binom{2t+3}{2} - (t+1) - (t+2) - (2t+1) \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{2t-1} [(2t+3)(t+1) - (4t+4)] = t+1 \end{aligned}$$

and  $\text{cm}(v_i) = c(vv_i)$  for  $1 \leq i \leq 2t-1$ , it follows that  $c$  is a rainbow mean coloring of  $G$  with  $\text{rm}(c) = 2t+2$ . Therefore,  $\text{rm}(G) \leq n+2$ .

It remains to show that  $\text{rm}(G) \geq n+2 = 2t+2$ . Assume, to the contrary, that there is a rainbow mean coloring  $c$  of  $G$  such that  $\text{rm}(c) \in \{2t, 2t+1\}$ . We consider two cases, according to whether  $\text{rm}(c) = 2t$  or  $\text{rm}(c) = 2t+1$ .

*Case 1.*  $\text{rm}(c) = 2t$ . Then  $\{\text{cm}(u) : u \in V(G)\} = [2t]$ . Since  $\text{cm}(v_i) = c(vv_i)$  for  $1 \leq i \leq 2t-1$ , it follows that  $\{c(vv_i) : 1 \leq i \leq 2t-1\} = [2t] - \{a\}$  for some integer  $a \in [2t]$ . Thus,

$$\text{cm}(v) = \frac{1}{2t-1} \left[ \binom{2t+1}{2} - a \right] = \frac{1}{2t-1} [t(2t+1) - a] = \frac{1}{2t-1} (2t^2 + t - a).$$

If  $a = 1$ , then  $\text{cm}(v) = t+1$ ; while if  $a = 2t$ , then  $\text{cm}(v) = t$ . In either case,  $\text{cm}(v) = \text{cm}(v_i)$  for some integer  $i$  with  $1 \leq i \leq 2t-1$ , which is impossible. On the other hand, if  $1 < a < 2t$ , then  $\text{cm}(v)$  is not an integer, which is also impossible.

*Case 2.*  $\text{rm}(c) = 2t+1$ . Then  $\{\text{cm}(u) : u \in V(G)\} \subseteq [2t+1]$ . Since  $\text{cm}(v_i) = c(vv_i)$  for  $1 \leq i \leq 2t-1$ , it follows that  $\{c(vv_i) : 1 \leq i \leq 2t-1\} = [2t+1] - \{a, b\}$  for some  $a, b \in [2t+1]$  and  $a \neq b$ . Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{cm}(v) &= \frac{1}{2t-1} \left[ \binom{2t+2}{2} - (a+b) \right] = \frac{1}{2t-1} [(t+1)(2t+1) - (a+b)] \\ &= \frac{1}{2t-1} [(2t^2 + 3t + 1) - (a+b)] \end{aligned}$$

★ If  $a = 1$  and  $b = 2$ , then  $\text{cm}(v) = t+2$ ;

★ If  $a = 2t$  and  $b = 2t+1$ , then  $\text{cm}(v) = t$ ;

★ If  $\text{cm}(v) = t + 1$ , then  $a + b = 2t + 2$ , where  $1 \leq a < t + 1 < b \leq 2t + 1$ .

In any of these situations,  $\text{cm}(v) = \text{cm}(v_i)$  for some integer  $i$  with  $1 \leq i \leq 2t - 1$ , which is impossible. For any other choice of  $a$  and  $b$ , it follows that  $\text{cm}(v)$  is not an integer, which is also impossible. ■

Since each edge of a connected graph  $G$  of order at least 3 is to be assigned a positive integer color in such a way that every vertex color is an integer and all vertex colors are distinct, one may suspect that vertex colors considerably larger than the order of the graph may be required for some graphs. However, no such graph has been found yet. Indeed, the value of  $\text{rm}(G)$  has always been either  $n$  or  $n + 1$  for connected graphs  $G$  of order  $n \geq 3$  studied thus far, with the exception of stars of even order  $n \geq 4$ . This observation suggests the following conjecture.

**Conjecture 4.5.2** *For every connected graph  $G$  of order  $n \geq 3$ ,*

$$n \leq \text{rm}(G) \leq n + 2.$$

# Chapter 5

## Rainbow Mean Colorings II

**Abstract:** It was conjectured that if  $G$  is a connected graph of order  $n \geq 3$ , then  $n \leq \text{rm}(G) \leq n + 2$ . In this chapter, we investigate this conjecture for some well-known classes of connected bipartite graphs and verify it for prisms, hypercubes, and complete bipartite graphs.

### 5.1 Introduction

Let  $c$  be a rainbow mean coloring of a connected graph  $G$ . For a vertex  $v$  of  $G$ , recall that the *chromatic sum*  $\text{cs}(v)$  of  $v$  is defined as the sum of the colors of the edges incident with  $v$ . Hence,  $\text{cs}(v) = \sum_{e \in E_v} c(e) = \deg v \cdot \text{cm}(v)$ . Consequently, Observation 4.2.3 can be thought of as an extension of the First Theorem of Graph Theory when stated in the following way.

**Observation 5.1.1** *If  $c$  is a rainbow mean coloring of a connected graph  $G$ , then*

$$\sum_{v \in V(G)} \text{cs}(v) = 2 \sum_{e \in E(G)} c(e).$$

*Furthermore, if the order of  $G$  is  $n$  and  $\text{rm}(c) = n$ , then  $\sum_{v \in V(G)} \text{cm}(v) = \binom{n+1}{2}$ .*

A connected graph of order 3 or more with a rainbow mean coloring is referred to as a *mean-colored graph*. A vertex  $v$  in a mean-colored graph  $G$  is *chromatically odd* if  $\text{cs}(v) = \deg v \cdot \text{cm}(v)$  is an odd integer; otherwise,  $v$  is *chromatically even*. The following is an immediate consequence of Observation 5.1.1 and is a generalization of the well-known fact that every graph has an even number of odd vertices.

**Corollary 5.1.2** *Every mean-colored graph contains an even number of chromatically odd vertices.*

**Corollary 5.1.3** *If  $G$  is a connected graph of order  $n \geq 6$  with  $n \equiv 2 \pmod{4}$  all of whose vertices are odd, then  $\text{rm}(G) \geq n + 1$ .*

**Proof.** Assume, to the contrary, that  $\text{rm}(G) = n$ . Then there exists a rainbow mean coloring  $c : E(G) \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  of  $G$  such that  $\{\text{cm}(v) : v \in V(G)\} = [n] = \{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ . Since  $n \equiv 2 \pmod{4}$ , it follows that  $n = 4k + 2$  for some positive integer  $k$ . Thus, the set  $[n]$  contains  $2k + 1$  odd integers, namely  $1, 3, \dots, 4k + 1$ . Suppose that  $u_1, u_2, \dots, u_{2k+1}$  are the vertices of  $G$  such that  $\text{cm}(u_i) = 2i - 1$  for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, 2k + 1$ . Since every vertex of  $G$  has odd degree, the vertices  $u_1, u_2, \dots, u_{2k+1}$  are the only chromatically odd vertices, implying that there is an odd number of chromatically odd vertices, a contradiction. ■

For example, the Petersen graph  $P$  is a connected cubic graph of order  $10 \equiv 2 \pmod{4}$ . Figure 5.1 shows a rainbow mean coloring  $c$  of  $P$  with  $\text{rm}(c) = 11$ . Thus,  $\text{rm}(P) = 11$  by Corollary 5.1.3.

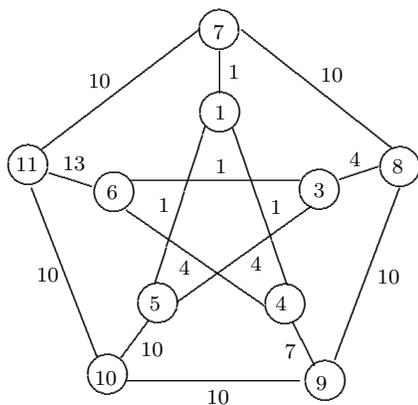


Figure 5.1: A rainbow mean coloring of the Petersen graph  $P$

Here, we will be dealing primarily with connected bipartite graphs  $G$  of order 3 or more having partite sets  $U$  and  $W$ . Because each of  $\sum_{u \in U} \text{cs}(u)$  and  $\sum_{w \in W} \text{cs}(w)$  counts the sum of the colors of the edges of  $G$ , we have the following fact.

**Observation 5.1.4** *Let  $G$  be a connected bipartite graph with partite sets  $U$  and  $W$ . If  $c$  is a rainbow mean coloring of  $G$ , then*

$$\sum_{u \in U} \text{cs}(u) = \sum_{w \in W} \text{cs}(w).$$

Recall that the rainbow mean index was determined for each complete graph and cycle, which we restate below.

**Theorem 5.1.5** For an integer  $n \geq 3$ ,

$$\text{rm}(K_n) = \begin{cases} n & \text{if } n \geq 4 \text{ and } n \equiv 0, 1, 3 \pmod{4} \\ n + 1 & \text{if } n = 3 \text{ or } n \equiv 2 \pmod{4} \end{cases}$$

$$\text{rm}(C_n) = \begin{cases} n & \text{if } n \equiv 0, 1 \pmod{4} \\ n + 1 & \text{if } n \equiv 2, 3 \pmod{4}. \end{cases}$$

In this chapter, we determine the rainbow mean index of every prism, hypercube, and complete bipartite graph as well as for some star-related trees.

## 5.2 Prisms, Hypercubes, and Complete Bipartite Graphs

The *prism*  $C_n \square K_2$ ,  $n \geq 3$ , is the Cartesian product of the  $n$ -cycle  $C_n$  and  $K_2$ . Of course,  $C_n \square K_2$  is bipartite if and only if  $n$  is even. The two smallest prisms are shown in Figure 5.2.

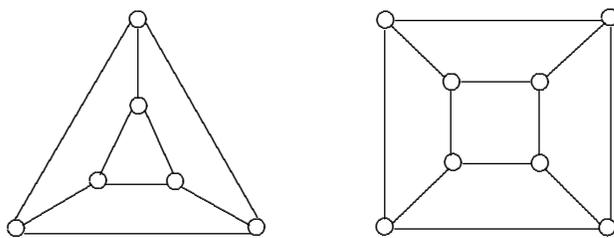


Figure 5.2: The prisms  $C_3 \square K_2$  and  $C_4 \square K_2$

We now determine the rainbow mean index of every prism.

**Theorem 5.2.1** For each integer  $n \geq 3$ ,

$$\text{rm}(C_n \square K_2) = \begin{cases} 2n & \text{if } n \text{ is even} \\ 2n + 1 & \text{if } n \text{ is odd.} \end{cases}$$

**Proof.** Let  $G = C_n \square K_2$  be constructed from the two  $n$ -cycles  $(u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n, u_{n+1} = u_1)$  and  $(v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n, v_{n+1} = v_1)$  and the edges  $u_i v_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . Thus,  $G$  is a cubic graph of order  $2n$ . We consider two cases depending on whether  $n$  is even or  $n$  is odd.

*Case 1.  $n$  is even.* By Observation 4.2.2, it suffices to show that there is a rainbow mean coloring  $c$  of  $G$  with  $\text{rm}(c) = 2n$ . Define the edge coloring  $c : E(G) \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  by

$$c(e) = \begin{cases} i & \text{if } e \in \{u_i u_{i-1}, u_i u_{i+1}\} \text{ where } i \text{ is odd and } 1 \leq i \leq n-1 \\ i+1+n & \text{if } e = v_i v_{i+1} \text{ where } i \text{ is odd and } 1 \leq i \leq n-1 \\ i+2n & \text{if } e = v_i v_{i+1} \text{ where } i \text{ is even and } 1 \leq i \leq n-2 \\ j & \text{if } e = u_j v_j \text{ where } 1 \leq j \leq n-1 \\ 2n & \text{if } e \text{ is incident with } v_n. \end{cases}$$

Since  $\text{cm}(u_i) = i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq n$  and  $\text{cm}(v_i) = n+i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq n$ , it follows that  $c$  is a rainbow mean coloring of  $G$  with  $\text{rm}(c) = 2n$ . This is illustrated in Figure 5.3 for  $n = 4, 6$ .

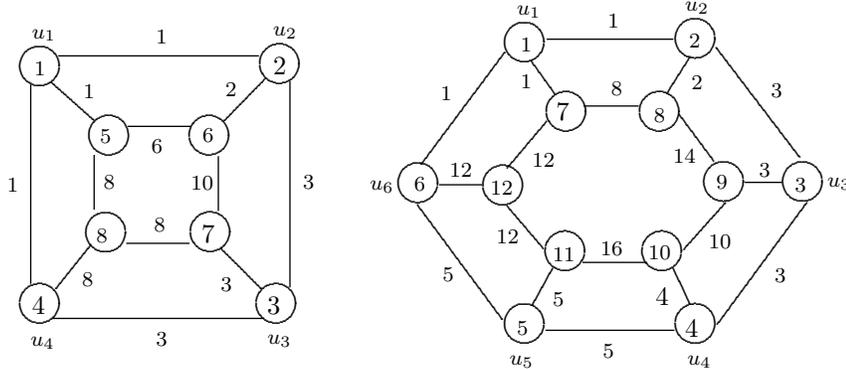


Figure 5.3: Rainbow mean colorings of  $C_4 \square K_2$  and  $C_6 \square K_2$

*Case 2.  $n$  is odd.* By Corollary 5.1.3,  $\text{rm}(G) \geq 2n+1$ . It remains to show that there is a rainbow mean coloring  $c$  of  $G$  with  $\text{rm}(c) = 2n+1$ . Define the edge

coloring  $c : E(G) \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  by

$$c(e) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } e = u_i u_{i+1} \text{ where } i \text{ is odd and } 1 \leq i \leq n \\ 4 & \text{if } e = u_i u_{i+1} \text{ where } i \text{ is even and } 2 \leq i \leq n-1 \\ 3i-2 & \text{if } e = u_i v_i \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq n \\ \frac{3n+5}{2} & \text{if } e = v_i v_{i+1} \text{ where } 1 \leq i \leq n. \end{cases}$$

Since  $\text{cm}(u_1) = 1$ ,  $\text{cm}(u_i) = i + 1$  for  $2 \leq i \leq n$ , and  $\text{cm}(v_i) = n + 1 + i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq n$ , it follows that  $c$  is a rainbow mean coloring of  $G$  with  $\text{rm}(c) = 2n + 1$ . This is illustrated in Figure 5.4 for  $n = 3, 5$ . ■

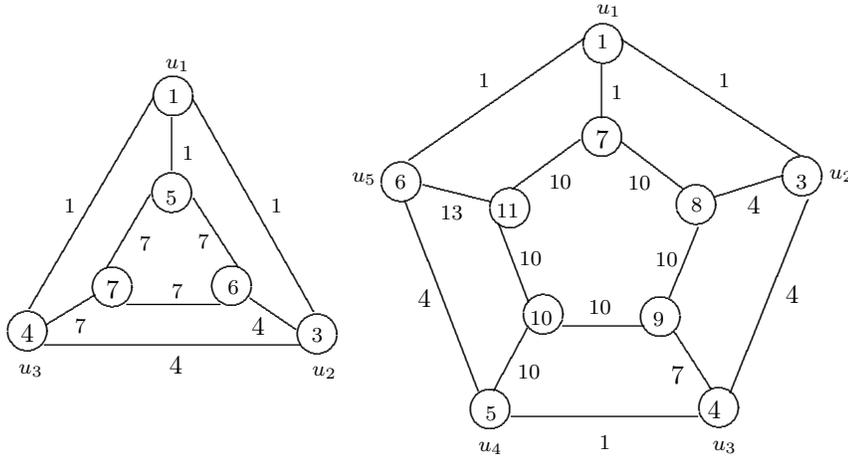


Figure 5.4: Rainbow mean colorings of  $C_3 \square K_2$  and  $C_5 \square K_2$

Another well-known class of bipartite graphs defined by means of Cartesian products is that of the hypercubes. The *hypercube*  $Q_n$  is  $K_2$  if  $n = 1$ , while for  $n \geq 2$ ,  $Q_n$  is defined recursively as the Cartesian product  $Q_{n-1} \square K_2$  of  $Q_{n-1}$  and  $K_2$ . For each integer  $n \geq 2$ , the hypercubes  $Q_n$  is an  $n$ -regular bipartite graph of order  $2^n$ . In order to determine the rainbow mean index of every hypercube, we first recall a well-known result (see [23]).

**Theorem 5.2.2** *Every regular bipartite graph contains a 1-factor (and is 1-factorable).*

**Theorem 5.2.3** *For each integer  $n \geq 2$ ,  $\text{rm}(Q_n) = 2^n$ .*

**Proof.** By Observation 4.2.2, it suffices to show that there is a rainbow mean coloring  $c$  of  $Q_n$  with  $\text{rm}(c) = 2^n$ . We proceed by induction on  $n \geq 2$ . Since  $\text{rm}(Q_2) = \text{rm}(C_4) = 4$  and  $\text{rm}(Q_3) = \text{rm}(C_4 \square K_2) = 8$  by Theorems 5.1.5 and 5.2.1, it follows that the statement is true for  $n = 2, 3$ . Suppose that there is a rainbow mean coloring of  $Q_n$  with rainbow mean index  $2^n$  for some integer  $n \geq 3$ . We show that  $G = Q_{n+1} = Q_n \square K_2$  has a rainbow mean coloring  $c$  with  $\text{rm}(c) = 2^{n+1}$ .

Let  $H$  and  $H'$  be the two copies of  $Q_n$  in  $G$  where each vertex  $v$  in  $H$  is adjacent to the vertex  $v'$  in  $H'$ . Since  $Q_n$  is a regular bipartite graph, it follows by Theorem 5.2.2 that  $Q_n$  has a 1-factor. Let  $F$  be a 1-factor of  $H$  and let  $F'$  be the corresponding 1-factor in  $H'$ . By the induction hypothesis, there is a rainbow mean coloring  $c_H : E(H) \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  of  $H$  with  $\text{rm}(c_H) = 2^n$ . Thus,

$$\{\text{cm}_{c_H}(v) : v \in V(H)\} = [2^n]. \quad (5.1)$$

We now extend the coloring  $c_H$  of  $H$  to an edge coloring  $c : E(G) \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  of  $G$  by defining

$$c(e) = \begin{cases} c_H(e) & \text{if } e \in E(H) \cup [E(H') - E(F')] \\ c_H(e) + (n+1)2^n & \text{if } e \in E(F') \\ i & \text{if } e = vv' \text{ and } \text{cm}_{c_H}(v) = i \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq 2^n \end{cases}$$

It remains to show that  $c$  is a rainbow mean coloring with  $\text{rm}(c) = 2^{n+1}$ .

★ Let  $v \in V(H)$ , where  $\text{cm}_{c_H}(v) = i \in [2^n]$ . Since

$$(n+1)\text{cm}_c(v) = ni + i = (n+1)i,$$

it follows that  $\text{cm}(v) = \text{cm}_{c_H}(v)$ . Hence,  $\{\text{cm}_c(v) : v \in V(H)\} = [2^n]$  by (5.1).

★ Let  $v' \in V(H')$ , where  $v$  is the neighbor of  $v'$  in  $H$ . Then  $\text{cm}_{c_H}(v) = i$  for some integer  $i \in [2^n]$ . By the defining property of  $c$ , it follows that

$$\begin{aligned} (n+1)\text{cm}_c(v') &= n\text{cm}_{c_H}(v) + i + (n+1)2^n = ni + i + (n+1)2^n \\ &= (n+1)(i + 2^n). \end{aligned}$$

Since  $\deg_G v' = n+1$ , it follows that  $\text{cm}_c(v') = i + 2^n$ . Hence,  $\{\text{cm}_c(v') : v' \in V(H')\} = [2^n + 1, 2^{n+1}]$ .

This implies that  $c$  is a rainbow mean coloring of  $G$  with  $\text{rm}(c) = 2^{n+1}$ . Hence, by mathematical induction,  $\text{rm}(Q_n) = 2^n$  for each integer  $n \geq 2$ . ■

To illustrate the proof of Theorem 5.2.3, we construct a rainbow mean coloring  $c$  of  $Q_4$  with  $\text{rm}(c) = 2^4 = 16$  from a rainbow mean coloring  $c_H$  of  $H = Q_3$  with  $\text{rm}(c_H) = 2^3 = 8$ . This coloring  $c$  is shown in Figure 5.5, where the four edges in the 1-factor  $F$  in  $H$  and the four edges in the 1-factor  $F'$  in  $H'$  are drawn in bold and each edge  $e'$  of  $F'$  is colored by  $c_H(e) + 4 \cdot 2^3 = c_H(e) + 32$  where  $e \in E(F)$ . Thus,  $\{c(e) : e \in E(F)\} = \{1, 3, 6, 8\}$  and  $\{c(e') : e' \in E(F')\} = \{33, 35, 38, 40\}$ .

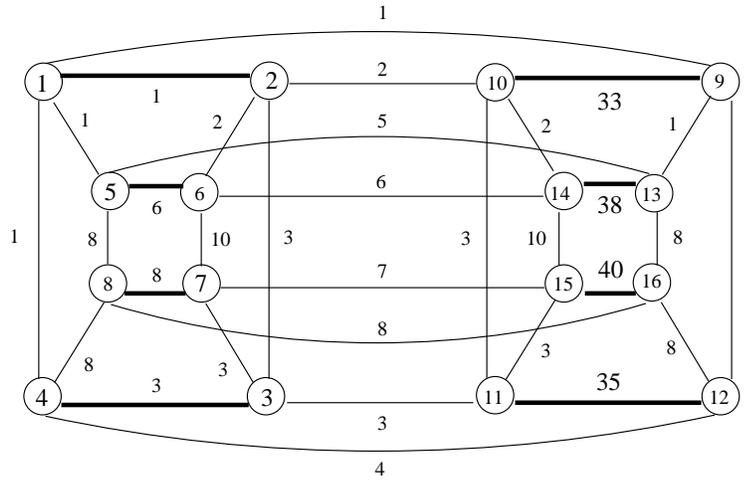


Figure 5.5: Constructing a rainbow mean coloring of  $Q_4$  from a rainbow mean coloring of  $Q_3$

A proof similar to that of Theorem 5.2.3 can be used to prove the following:

**Theorem 5.2.4** *If  $G$  is a connected regular bipartite graph of order  $n \geq 3$  with  $\text{rm}(G) = n$ , then  $\text{rm}(G \square K_2) = 2n$ .*

Recall the rainbow mean index was determined for all stars  $K_{1,t}$ , with  $t \geq 2$ .

**Theorem 5.2.5** For an integer  $t \geq 2$ ,  $\text{rm}(K_{1,t}) = \begin{cases} t+1 & \text{if } t \text{ is even} \\ t+3 & \text{if } t \text{ is odd.} \end{cases}$

We begin with an observation concerning  $\text{rm}(K_{s,t})$  when  $s$  and  $t$  are both odd.

**Proposition 5.2.6** If  $s$  and  $t$  are odd integers with  $s, t \geq 3$ , then

$$\text{rm}(K_{s,t}) \geq s + t + 1.$$

**Proof.** Let  $G = K_{s,t}$  where  $s, t \geq 3$ . Since  $s$  and  $t$  are both odd, it follows that  $s = 2a+1$  and  $t = 2b+1$  for some nonnegative integers  $a$  and  $b$  with  $a+b \geq 2$ . Note that if  $s \equiv t \pmod{4}$ , then the statement follows by Corollary 5.1.3. However, we verify the statement independently from this observation. Assume, to the contrary, that there is a rainbow mean coloring  $c : E(G) \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  of  $G$  with  $\text{rm}(c) = s+t$ . Thus,

$$\sum_{v \in V(G)} \text{cm}(v) = \binom{s+t+1}{2} = \frac{(s+t+1)(s+t)}{2} = (2a+2b+3)(a+b+1).$$

Let  $\{X, Y\}$  be a partition of the set  $[s+t]$  where  $|X| = t$  and  $|Y| = s$  such that the sum of elements in  $X$  is  $x$  and the sum of elements in  $Y$  is  $y$ . Since  $x+y = (2a+2b+3)(a+b+1)$  and  $sx = ty$ , it follows that

$$sx = ty = t[(2a+2b+3)(a+b+1) - x] = t(2a+2b+3)(a+b+1) - xt.$$

Thus,  $sx + tx = x(s+t) = t(2a+2b+3)(a+b+1)$  or  $(2a+2b+2)x = t(2a+2b+3)(a+b+1)$ . However then,  $2x = t(2a+2b+3)$ , which is an odd integer. This is a contradiction. Therefore,  $\text{rm}(G) \geq s+t+1$ . ■

Proposition 5.2.6 establishes lower bounds on the rainbow mean index for many complete bipartite graphs. However, the construction of a rainbow mean coloring for these graphs resulting in the desired upper bound involves extensive case by case analysis and so we simply state the value of this parameter for this class of graph without proof.

**Theorem 5.2.7** *If  $s$  and  $t$  are positive integers with  $\min\{s, t\} \geq 2$ , then*

$$\text{rm}(K_{s,t}) = \begin{cases} s + t & \text{if at least one of } s \text{ and } t \text{ is even} \\ s + t + 1 & \text{if both } s \text{ and } t \text{ are odd} \end{cases}$$

Figure 5.6 exhibits minimizing rainbow mean colorings with respect to the rainbow mean indexes for  $K_{4,6}$  and  $K_{4,7}$ . These examples represent the pattern involved in constructing such a coloring for a few general cases.

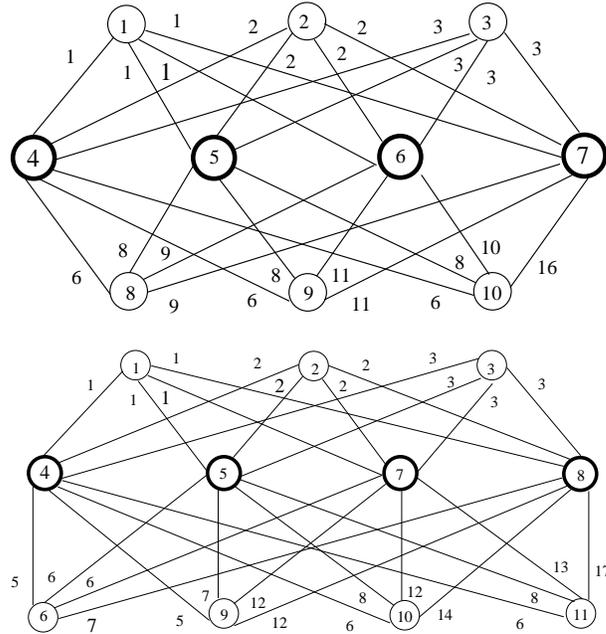


Figure 5.6: Rainbow mean colorings of  $K_{4,6}$  and  $K_{4,7}$

As we saw, it was conjectured in that if  $G$  is a connected graph of order  $n \geq 3$ , then  $\text{rm}(G) \leq n + 2$ . All of the bipartite graphs considered in this article substantiate this conjecture. Indeed, the only connected bipartite graphs  $G$  of order  $n \geq 3$  found thus far having  $\text{rm}(G) = n + 2$  are stars of even order. Consequently, not only may this conjecture be true but those connected graphs  $G$  for which  $\text{rm}(G) = n + 2$  may be rare.

### 5.3 Star-Related Trees

Since only stars of even order  $n \geq 4$  have been shown to have rainbow mean index different from  $n$  or  $n + 1$ , this suggests studying the rainbow mean index of trees

related to stars in some manner. In this section, we determine the rainbow mean index of three classes of trees, namely cubic caterpillars, subdivided stars, and double stars.

### 5.3.1 Cubic Caterpillars

A tree  $T$  is referred to as  $r$ -regular for some integer  $r \geq 2$  if every non-leaf of  $T$  has degree  $r$ . A *caterpillar*  $T$  is a tree of order 3 or more, the removal of whose leaves produces a path called the *spine* of  $T$ . A star is therefore a caterpillar with a trivial spine. A caterpillar  $T$  is *cubic* if  $\deg v = 3$  for every non-leaf  $v$  of  $T$ . We now consider the class of cubic caterpillars  $T_n$  of even order  $n = 2\ell \geq 6$  consisting of the path  $(u_0, u_1, \dots, u_\ell)$  of order  $\ell + 1$  and  $\ell - 1$  additional pendent edges  $u_i v_i$  where  $1 \leq i \leq \ell - 1$ . The vertices  $u_i$ ,  $1 \leq i \leq \ell$ , thus have degree 3 and all other vertices of  $T_n$  are leaves.

**Theorem 5.3.1** *For each integer  $n \geq 6$ ,*

$$\text{rm}(T_n) = \begin{cases} n & \text{if } n \equiv 0 \pmod{4} \\ n + 1 & \text{if } n \equiv 2 \pmod{4}. \end{cases}$$

**Proof.** Assume first that  $n \equiv 0 \pmod{4}$ . Then  $n = 4k$  for some integer  $k \geq 2$ . To show that  $\text{rm}(T_n) = n$  in this case, it suffices to show that there is a rainbow mean coloring  $c$  of  $T_n$  with  $\text{rm}(c) = n$ . Then  $T_n$  consists of the path  $P = (u_0, u_1, \dots, u_{2k})$  of order  $2k + 1$  and  $2k - 1$  additional pendent edges  $u_i v_i$  where  $1 \leq i \leq 2k - 1$ . Let  $c$  be the edge coloring of  $T_n$  defined by

$$c(e) = \begin{cases} 2i & \text{if } e = u_i v_i \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq 2k - 2 \\ 4k - 3 & \text{if } e = u_{2k-1} v_{2k-1} \\ 1 & \text{if } e = u_0 u_1 \\ 2i + 4 & \text{if } e = u_i u_{i+1} \text{ where } 1 \leq i \leq 2k - 3 \text{ and } i \text{ is odd} \\ 2i + 1 & \text{if } e = u_i u_{i+1} \text{ where } 2 \leq i \leq 2k - 4 \text{ and } i \text{ is even} \\ 4k & \text{if } e = u_{2k-2} u_{2k-1}, u_{2k-1} u_{2k}. \end{cases}$$

Then the chromatic means of the vertices of  $T_n$  are given by

$$\text{cm}(u_i) = \begin{cases} 2i + 1 & \text{if } 0 \leq i \leq 2k - 3 \text{ or } i = 2k - 1 \\ 2i + 2 & \text{if } i = 2k - 2 \\ 2i & \text{if } i = 2k \end{cases}$$

$$\text{cm}(v_i) = \begin{cases} 2i & \text{if } 1 \leq i \leq 2k - 2 \\ 2i - 1 & \text{if } i = 2k - 1. \end{cases}$$

Hence,  $c$  is a rainbow mean coloring with  $\text{rm}(c) = n$  and so  $\text{rm}(T_n) = n$  if  $n \equiv 0 \pmod{4}$ . This coloring is illustrated in Figure 5.7 for the cubic caterpillar  $T_{16}$  where  $k = 4$ .

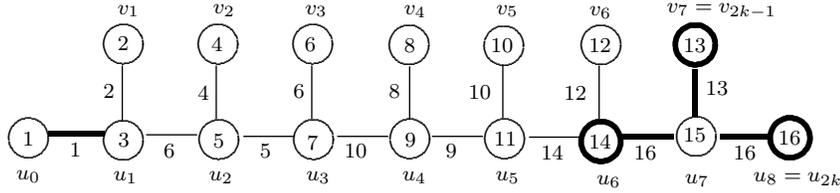


Figure 5.7: A rainbow mean coloring of  $T_{16}$

Next, suppose that  $n \equiv 2 \pmod{4}$ . Then  $n = 4k + 2$  for a positive integer  $k$ . Then  $T_n$  consists of the path  $P = (u_0, u_1, \dots, u_{2k+1})$  of order  $2k + 2$  and  $2k$  additional pendent edges  $u_i v_i$  where  $1 \leq i \leq 2k$ . Since  $n \equiv 2 \pmod{4}$  and each vertex of  $T_n$  is odd, it follows by Corollary 5.1.3 that  $\text{rm}(T_n) \geq n + 1$ . It suffices to show that there is a rainbow mean coloring  $c$  of  $T_n$  with  $\text{rm}(c) = n + 1$ . Let  $c$  be the edge coloring of  $T_n$  defined by

$$c(e) = \begin{cases} 2 & \text{if } e = u_1 v_1 \\ 2i + 1 & \text{if } e = u_i v_i \text{ for } 2 \leq i \leq 2k \\ 1 & \text{if } e = u_0 u_1 \\ 2i + 4 & \text{if } e = u_i u_{i+1} \text{ where } 1 \leq i \leq 2k - 1 \text{ and } i \text{ is odd} \\ 2i + 3 & \text{if } e = u_i u_{i+1} \text{ where } 2 \leq i \leq 2k \text{ and } i \text{ is even.} \end{cases}$$

Then the chromatic means of the vertices of  $T_n$  are given by

$$\text{cm}(u_i) = \begin{cases} 2i + 1 & \text{if } i = 0, 1, 2k + 1 \\ 2i + 2 & \text{if } 2 \leq i \leq 2k \end{cases}$$

$$\text{cm}(v_i) = \begin{cases} 2 & \text{if } i = 1 \\ 2i + 1 & \text{if } 2 \leq i \leq 2k. \end{cases}$$

Hence,  $c$  is a rainbow mean coloring with  $\text{rm}(c) = n + 1$  and so  $\text{rm}(T_n) = n + 1$  if  $n \equiv 2 \pmod{4}$ . This coloring is illustrated in Figure 5.7 for the cubic caterpillar  $T_{16}$  where  $k = 4$ . ■

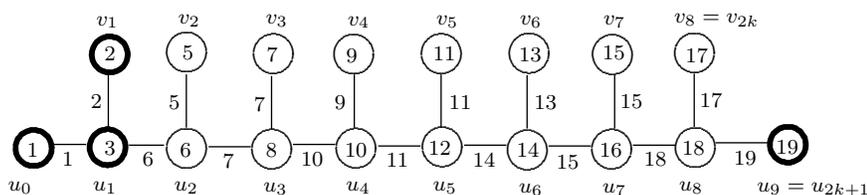


Figure 5.8: A rainbow mean coloring of  $T_{18}$

### 5.3.2 Subdivided Stars

The *subdivision graph*  $S(G)$  of a graph  $G$  is the graph obtained from  $G$  by subdividing each edge of  $G$  exactly once (that is, by replacing each edge  $e = uv$  of  $G$  by a new vertex  $w_e$  and the two new edges  $uw_e$  and  $vw_e$ , where  $w_e$  is called the *subdivision vertex* of  $e$ ). If  $G$  is a graph of order  $n$  and size  $m$ , then the order of  $S(G)$  is  $n + m$  and its size is  $2m$ .

**Theorem 5.3.2** For each integer  $t \geq 3$ ,  $\text{rm}(S(K_{1,t})) = 2t + 1$ .

**Proof.** Let  $G = S(K_{1,t})$  be the subdivision graph of the star  $K_{1,t}$ , where  $t \geq 3$ . Then the order of  $G$  is  $n = 2t + 1$ . By Observation 4.2.2, it suffices to show that there is a rainbow mean coloring  $c$  of  $G$  with  $\text{rm}(c) = n$ . We consider two cases, according to whether  $t$  is even or  $t$  is odd.

*Case 1.*  $t \geq 4$  is even. Then  $t = 2k$  for some integer  $k \geq 2$ . Let

$$V(K_{1,2k}) = \{u_1, u_2, \dots, u_k\} \cup \{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_k\} \cup \{w\},$$

where  $w$  is the central vertex of  $K_{1,2k}$ . For each integer  $i$  with  $1 \leq i \leq k$ , let  $v_i$  be the subdivision vertex of  $u_iw$  and let  $y_i$  be the subdivision vertex of  $x_iw$ . Define the edge coloring  $c : E(G) \rightarrow [4k + 1]$  as follows: For  $1 \leq i \leq k$ ,

$$c(u_iv_i) = 2i - 1, c(v_iw) = 2i + 1, \\ c(x_iy_i) = 2k + 2i + 1, \text{ and } c(y_iw) = 2k + 2i - 1.$$

Then the chromatic means of the vertices of  $G$  are given by

$$\text{cm}(u_i) = 2i - 1 \text{ and } \text{cm}(v_i) = 2i \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq k, \\ \text{cm}(w) = 2k + 1, \\ \text{cm}(x_i) = 2k + 2i + 1 \text{ and } \text{cm}(y_i) = 2k + 2i \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq k.$$

Thus,  $c$  is a rainbow mean coloring of  $G$  with  $\text{rm}(c) = 4k + 1$ . This coloring is illustrated in Figure 5.9 for the subdivision graph  $S(K_{1,8})$  of the star  $K_{1,8}$ .

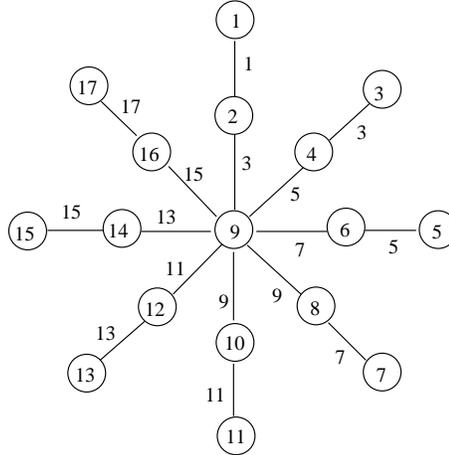


Figure 5.9: A rainbow mean coloring of  $S(K_{1,8})$

*Case 2.  $t \geq 3$  is odd.* Then  $t = 2k + 1$  for some positive integer  $k$ . Let

$$V(K_{1,2k+1}) = \{u_1, u_2, \dots, u_k\} \cup \{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_{k-1}\} \cup \{w_1, z_1\} \cup \{w\},$$

where  $w$  is the central vertex of  $K_{1,2k+1}$ . For each integer  $i$  with  $1 \leq i \leq k$ , let  $v_i$  be the subdivision vertex of  $u_iw$  for  $1 \leq i \leq k$ , let  $y_i$  be the subdivision vertex of  $x_iw$  for  $1 \leq i \leq k - 1$ , let  $w_2$  be the subdivision vertex of  $w_1w$ , and let  $z_2$  be the subdivision vertex of  $z_1w$ . Define the edge coloring  $c : E(G) \rightarrow [4k + 3]$  by

$$\begin{aligned}
c(u_i v_i) &= 2i - 1 \text{ and } c(v_i w) = 2i + 1 \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq k \\
c(w_1 w_2) &= 2k + 3, \quad c(w_2 w) = 2k - 1, \\
c(z_1 z_2) &= 2k + 4, \quad c(z_2 w) = 2k + 6, \\
c(x_i y_i) &= 2k + 2i + 5, \text{ and } c(y_i w) = 2k + 2i + 3 \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq k - 1.
\end{aligned}$$

Then the chromatic means of the vertices of  $G$  are given by

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{cm}(u_i) &= 2i - 1 \text{ and } \text{cm}(v_i) = 2i \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq k, \\
\text{cm}(w) &= 2k + 2, \quad \text{cm}(w_1) = 2k + 3, \quad \text{cm}(w_2) = 2k + 1, \\
\text{cm}(z_1) &= 2k + 4, \quad \text{cm}(z_2) = 2k + 6 \\
\text{cm}(x_i) &= 2k + 2i + 5 \text{ and } \text{cm}(y_i) = 2k + 2i + 4 \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq k - 1.
\end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $c$  is a rainbow mean coloring of  $G$  with  $\text{rm}(c) = 4k + 3$ . This coloring is illustrated in Figure 5.10 for the subdivision graph  $S(K_{1,9})$  of the star  $K_{1,9}$ . ■

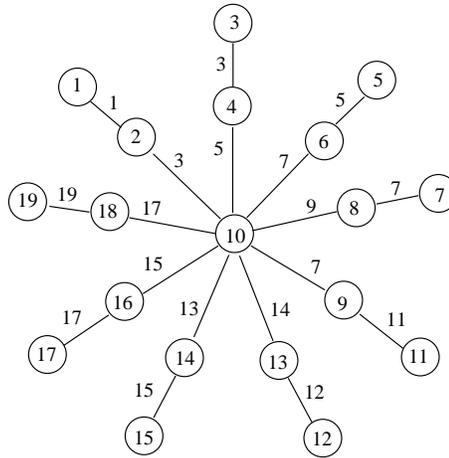


Figure 5.10: A rainbow mean coloring of  $S(K_{1,9})$

### 5.3.3 Double Stars

We saw in Theorem 5.2.7 that the rainbow mean index of the star  $K_{1,t}$ ,  $t \geq 2$ , is  $t+1$  if  $t$  even and is  $t+3$  if  $t$  is odd. In fact, the stars of even order 4 or more are the only connected graphs whose rainbow mean index has been shown to be neither the order nor one plus the order of the graph. This suggests investigating the rainbow mean index of the related double stars class of graphs. For integers  $a$  and  $b$  with  $2 \leq a \leq b$ , the double star  $S_{a,b}$  is that tree of order  $a+b$  (and size  $a+b-1$ )

and diameter 3 whose central vertices  $u$  and  $v$  have degrees  $a$  and  $b$ , respectively. The vertex  $u$  is thus adjacent to  $a - 1$  end-vertices, denoted by  $u_1, u_2, \dots, u_{a-1}$ , while  $v$  is adjacent to  $b - 1$  end-vertices, denoted by  $v_1, v_2, \dots, v_{b-1}$ .

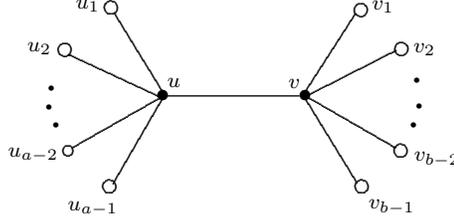


Figure 5.11: The double star  $S_{a,b}$  of order  $a + b$  where  $a, b \geq 2$

First, we determine  $\text{rm}(S_{a,b})$  where  $a = b$ . Since  $\text{rm}(S_{2,2}) = \text{rm}(P_4) = 5$  by Theorem 4.3.2, we may assume that  $a \geq 3$ .

**Theorem 5.3.3** *For each integer  $a \geq 3$ ,*

$$\text{rm}(S_{a,a}) = \begin{cases} 2a & \text{if } a \text{ is even} \\ 2a + 1 & \text{if } a \text{ is odd.} \end{cases}$$

**Proof.** Suppose that  $u$  and  $v$  are the central vertices of  $G = S_{a,a}$  where  $u$  is adjacent to the  $a - 1$  end-vertices  $u_1, u_2, \dots, u_{a-1}$  and  $v$  is adjacent to the  $a - 1$  end-vertices  $v_1, v_2, \dots, v_{a-1}$ . We consider two cases, according to whether  $a$  is even or  $a$  is odd.

*Case 1.  $a \geq 4$  is even.* Then  $a = 2k$  for some integer  $k \geq 2$ . Since the order of  $G$  is  $4k$ , it suffices to show that there is a rainbow mean coloring  $c$  of  $G$  with  $\text{rm}(c) = 4k$  by Observation 4.2.2. Define the edge coloring  $c$  such that

$$\begin{aligned} \{c(uu_i) : 1 \leq i \leq 2k\} &= [k] \cup [3k + 1, 4k - 1] \\ c(uv) &= k \\ \{c(vv_i) : 1 \leq i \leq 2k\} &= ([k + 1, 3k] \cup \{4k\}) - \{2k - 1, 2k + 1\}. \end{aligned}$$

Then the chromatic means of the vertices of  $G$  are given by

$$\begin{aligned} \text{cm}(u_i) &= c(uu_i) \text{ and } \text{cm}(v_i) = c(vv_i) \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq 2k, \\ \text{cm}(u) &= 2k - 1 \text{ and } \text{cm}(v) = 2k + 1. \end{aligned}$$

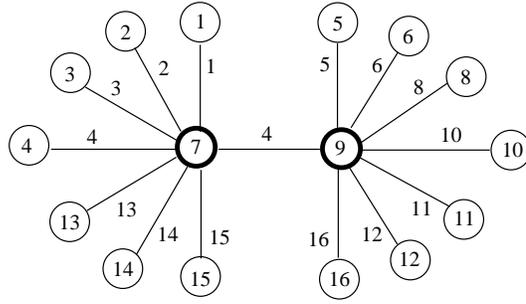


Figure 5.12: A rainbow mean coloring of  $S_{8,8}$

This coloring  $c$  is illustrated in Figure 5.12 for the double star  $S_{8,8}$  where  $k = 4$ . Thus,  $c$  is a rainbow mean coloring of  $G$  with  $\text{rm}(c) = 4k$ .

*Case 2.  $a \geq 3$  is odd.* Then  $a = 2k + 1$  for some positive integer  $k$ . Since the order of  $G$  is  $4k + 2$  and every vertex of  $G$  is odd, it follows by Corollar 5.1.3 that  $\text{rm}(G) \geq 4k + 3$ . Thus, it remains to show that there is a rainbow mean coloring  $c$  of  $G$  with  $\text{rm}(c) = 4k + 3$ . Define the edge coloring  $c$  as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} c(u_i u) &= 2i - 1 \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq k \text{ and } c(u_i u) = 2i + 1 \text{ for } k + 1 \leq i \leq 2k \\ c(v_i v) &= 2i \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq k \text{ and } c(v_i v) = 2i + 2 \text{ for } k + 1 \leq i \leq 2k - 1, \\ c(uv) &= 2k + 1 \text{ and } c(v_{2k} v) = 4k + 3. \end{aligned}$$

Then the chromatic means of the vertices of  $G$  are given by

$$\begin{aligned} \text{cm}(u_i) &= c(u_i u) \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq 2k \text{ and } \text{cm}(v_i) = c(v_i v) \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq k, \\ \text{cm}(u) &= 2k + 1 \text{ and } \text{cm}(v) = 2k + 2. \end{aligned}$$

This coloring  $c$  is illustrated in Figure 5.13 for the double star  $S_{9,9}$  where  $k = 4$ . Thus,  $c$  is a rainbow mean coloring of  $G$  with  $\text{rm}(c) = 4k + 3$ . ■

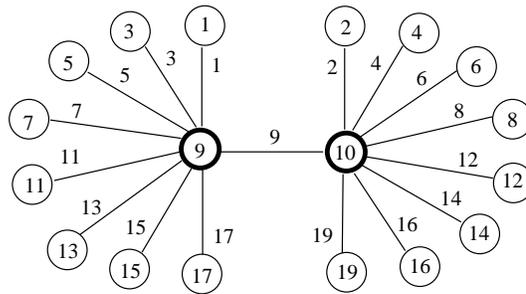


Figure 5.13: A rainbow mean coloring of  $S_{9,9}$

If  $a, b \geq 3$  are odd and  $a \equiv b \pmod{4}$ , then it follows by Corollary 5.1.3 that  $\text{rm}(S_{a,b}) \geq a + b + 1$ . In fact,  $\text{rm}(S_{a,b}) = a + b + 1$  as we show next.

**Theorem 5.3.4** *If  $a$  and  $b$  are odd integers with  $a, b \geq 3$  and  $a \equiv b \pmod{4}$ , then*

$$\text{rm}(S_{a,b}) = a + b + 1.$$

**Proof.** By Theorem 5.3.3, we may assume that  $a < b$ . Since  $a$  and  $b$  are odd integers and  $a \equiv b \pmod{4}$ , it follows that either  $a$  and  $b$  are both congruence to 1 modulo 4 or  $a$  and  $b$  are both congruence to 3 modulo 4. In each case,  $a + b \equiv 2 \pmod{4}$  and every vertex of  $G$  is odd. Hence,  $\text{rm}(G) \geq a + b + 1$  by Corollary 5.1.3. Thus, it remains to show that there is a rainbow mean coloring  $c$  of  $G$  with  $\text{rm}(c) = a + b + 1$ . We consider these two cases.

*Case 1.*  $a \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$  and  $b \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$ . Then  $a = 4j + 1$  and  $b = 4k + 1$  for some integers  $j, k$  with  $1 \leq j < k$ . Let  $u$  and  $v$  be the central vertices of  $G = S_{4j+1, 4j+1}$  where  $u$  is adjacent to the  $a - 1 = 4j + 2$  end-vertices  $u_1, u_2, \dots, u_{4j}$  and  $v$  is adjacent to the  $b - 1 = 4k + 2$  end-vertices  $v_1, v_2, \dots, v_{4k}$ . Define the edge coloring  $c$  by

$$\begin{aligned} \{c(uu_i) : 1 \leq i \leq 2j\} &= [4j + 1] - \{2j + 1\}, \\ c(uv) &= 2j + 1 \end{aligned}$$

$$\{c(vv_i) : 1 \leq i \leq 2j + 2\} = [4j + 2, 4j + 4k + 3] - \{2k + 2j + 2, 2k + 4j + 2\}.$$

Then the chromatic means of the vertices of  $G$  are given by

$$\begin{aligned} \text{cm}(u_i) &= c(uu_i) \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq 4j, \\ \text{cm}(u) &= 2j + 1, \text{ cm}(v) = 2k + 4j + 2. \\ \text{cm}(v_i) &= c(vv_i) \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq 4k. \end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $c$  is a rainbow mean coloring of  $G$  with  $\text{rm}(c) = 4j + 4k + 3$ .

*Case 2.*  $a \equiv 3 \pmod{4}$  and  $b \equiv 3 \pmod{4}$ . Then  $a = 4j + 3$  and  $b = 4k + 3$  for some integers  $j, k$  with  $0 \leq j < k$ . Let  $u$  and  $v$  be the central vertices of  $G = S_{4j+3, 4j+3}$  where  $u$  is adjacent to the  $a - 1 = 4j + 2$  end-vertices  $u_1, u_2, \dots, u_{4j+2}$  and  $v$  is adjacent to the  $b - 1 = 4k + 2$  end-vertices  $v_1, v_2, \dots, v_{4k+2}$ . Define the edge coloring  $c$  by

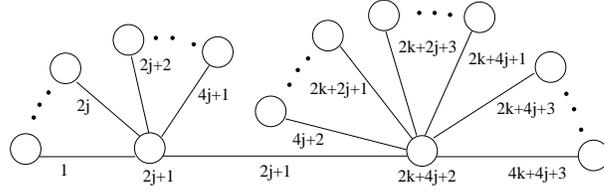


Figure 5.14: A rainbow mean coloring of  $S_{4j+1, 4k+1}$

$$\{c(uu_i) : 1 \leq i \leq 2j\} = [4j + 3] - \{2j + 2\},$$

$$c(uv) = 2j + 2$$

$$\{c(vv_i) : 1 \leq i \leq 2j + 2\} = [4j + 4, 4j + 4k + 7] - \{2k + 2j + 4, 2k + 4j + 5\}.$$

Then the chromatic means of the vertices of  $G$  are given by

$$\text{cm}(u_i) = c(uu_i) \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq 4j + 2,$$

$$\text{cm}(u) = 2j + 2, \text{ cm}(v) = 2k + 4j + 5.$$

$$\text{cm}(v_i) = c(vv_i) \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq 4k + 2.$$

Thus,  $c$  is a rainbow mean coloring of  $G$  with  $\text{rm}(c) = 4j + 4k + 7$ . ■

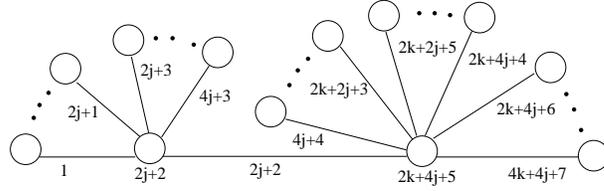


Figure 5.15: A rainbow mean coloring of  $S_{4j+3, 4k+3}$

We now turn our attention to the double stars  $S_{a,b}$  where  $2 \leq a < b$  and at least one of  $a$  and  $b$  is even.

**Theorem 5.3.5** *If  $a$  and  $b$  are integers with  $2 \leq a < b$  such that  $ab$  is even, then*

$$\text{rm}(S_{a,b}) = a + b.$$

**Proof.** Let  $G = S_{a,b}$  where  $2 \leq a < b$  and  $ab$  is even. By Observation 4.2.2, it suffices to show that there is a rainbow mean coloring  $c$  of  $G$  with  $\text{rm}(c) = a + b$ . We consider three cases, according to the parities of  $a$  and  $b$ .

*Case 1.  $a$  and  $b$  are both even.* Then  $a = 2j$  and  $b = 2k$  where  $j$  and  $k$  are integers and  $1 \leq j < k$ . Let  $u$  and  $v$  be the central vertices of  $G = S_{2j, 2k}$  where

$u$  is adjacent to the  $a - 1 = 2j - 1$  end-vertices  $u_1, u_2, \dots, u_{2j-1}$  and  $v$  is adjacent to the  $b - 1 = 2k - 1$  end-vertices  $v_1, v_2, \dots, v_{2k-1}$ . It suffices to show that there exists a rainbow mean coloring  $c$  with  $\text{rm}(c) = a + b$ . Define the edge coloring  $c$  by

$$\begin{aligned} \{c(uu_i) : 1 \leq i \leq 2j - 1\} &= [j + 1, 3j - 1], \\ c(uv) &= 2j(j + 1) \\ \{c(vv_i) : 1 \leq i \leq 2k - 1\} &= [j] \cup [3j + 1, 2j + 2k] - \{2j + k\}. \end{aligned}$$

Then the chromatic means of the vertices of  $G$  are given by

$$\begin{aligned} \text{cm}(u_i) &= c(uu_i) \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq 2j - 1, \\ \text{cm}(u) &= 3j, \text{ cm}(v) = 2j + k. \\ \text{cm}(v_i) &= c(vv_i) \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq 2k - 1. \end{aligned}$$

Since  $j + 1 \leq k$ , it follows that  $\text{cm}(u) \neq \text{cm}(v)$ . Thus,  $c$  is a rainbow mean coloring of  $G$  with  $\text{rm}(c) = 2j + 2k$ .

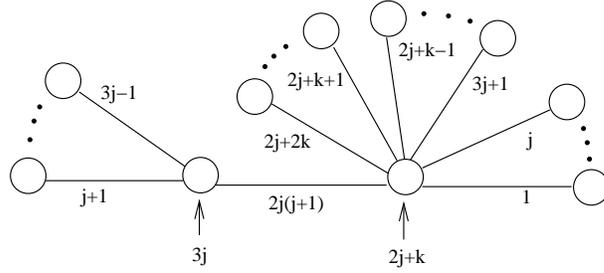


Figure 5.16: A rainbow mean coloring of  $S_{2j,2k}$  where  $j < k$

*Case 2.  $a \geq 3$  is odd and  $b \geq 4$  is even.* Then  $a = 2j + 1$  and  $b = 2k$  for some integers  $j, k$  with  $1 \leq j < k$ . Let  $u$  and  $v$  be the central vertices of  $G$  where  $u$  is adjacent to the  $a - 1 = 2j$  end-vertices  $u_1, u_2, \dots, u_{2j}$  and  $v$  is adjacent to the  $b - 1 = 2k - 1$  end-vertices  $v_1, v_2, \dots, v_{2k-1}$ . Define the edge coloring  $c$  by

$$\begin{aligned} c(uu_i) &= i \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq 2j, \quad c(uv) = 2jk + 2j + k + 1 \\ \{c(vv_i) : 1 \leq i \leq 2k - 1\} &= [2j + 1, 2k + 2j + 1] - \{k + j + 1, k + 3j + 1\}. \end{aligned}$$

Then the chromatic means of the vertices of  $G$  are given by

$$\begin{aligned} \text{cm}(u_i) &= c(uu_i) \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq 2j, \quad \text{cm}(u) = k + j + 1, \quad \text{cm}(v) = k + 3j + 1. \\ \text{cm}(v_i) &= c(vv_i) \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq 2k - 1. \end{aligned}$$

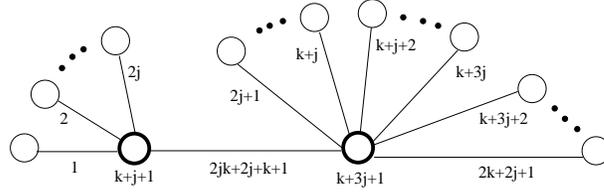


Figure 5.17: A rainbow mean coloring of  $S_{2j+1, 2k}$  where  $j < k$

Thus,  $c$  is a rainbow mean coloring of  $G$  with  $\text{rm}(c) = 2j + 2k + 1$ .

*Case 3.*  $a \geq 2$  is even, and  $b \geq 3$  is odd. Then  $a = 2j$  and  $b = 2k + 1$  where  $1 \leq j \leq k$ . Let  $u$  and  $v$  be the central vertices of  $G$  where  $u$  is adjacent to the  $a - 1 = 2j - 1$  end-vertices  $u_1, u_2, \dots, u_{2j-1}$  and  $v$  is adjacent to the  $b - 1 = 2k$  end-vertices  $v_1, v_2, \dots, v_{2k}$ . Define the edge coloring  $c$  by

$$\begin{aligned} \{c(uu_i) : 1 \leq i \leq 2j - 1\} &= [j + k + 2, 3j + k], \\ c(uv) &= 2j(j + 1) + k + 1 \\ \{c(vv_i) : 1 \leq i \leq 2k\} &= [j + k] \cup [3j + k + 2, 2j + 2k + 1]. \end{aligned}$$

Then the chromatic means of the vertices of  $G$  are given by

$$\begin{aligned} \text{cm}(u_i) &= c(uu_i) \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq 2j - 1, \\ \text{cm}(u) &= 3j + k + 1, \text{ cm}(v) = j + k + 1. \\ \text{cm}(v_i) &= c(vv_i) \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq 2k. \end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $c$  is a rainbow mean coloring of  $G$  with  $\text{rm}(c) = 2j + 2k + 1$ . ■

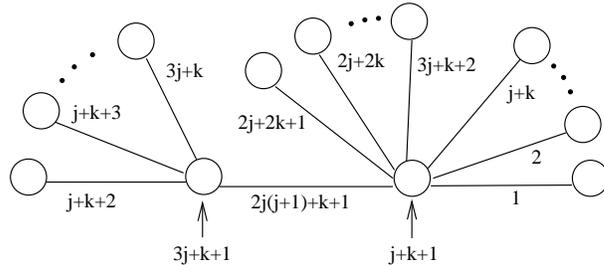


Figure 5.18: A rainbow mean coloring of  $S_{2j, 2k+1}$  where  $j \leq k$

The one remaining class of double stars  $S_{a,b}$  for which the rainbow mean index has not yet been determined is that where  $a$  and  $b$  are both odd and  $a \not\equiv b \pmod{4}$ . In order to present a result dealing with this class, it is convenient to establish the following two lemmas.

**Lemma 5.3.6** For positive integers  $a$  and  $b$  with  $a \leq b$  and the set

$$X = [4a + 4b + 4] - \{2a + 2b + 1, 2a + 2b + 3\},$$

let  $s_1 = \sum_{i=1}^{4a} i$  and  $s_2 = \sum_{i=1}^{4a} (4b + 4 + i)$ . For every integer  $s$  with  $s_1 \leq s \leq s_2$ , there

exists a  $(4a)$ -element subset  $S$  of  $X$  such that  $\sum_{x \in S} x = s$ .

**Proof.** First, we show that there exists a  $(4a)$ -element subset  $S \subseteq [4a + 4b + 4]$  such that  $\sum_{x \in S} x = s$ . If  $s = s_1$  or  $s = s_2$ , then the result holds. Thus, we may assume that  $s_1 < s < s_2$ . Let  $m$  be the minimum integer in  $[4b + 4]$  such that

$$[m + (m + 1) + \cdots + (m + 4a - 1)] < s < [(m + 1) + (m + 2) + \cdots + (m + 4a)].$$

Let  $t = (m + 1) + (m + 2) + \cdots + (m + 4a - 1)$ . Therefore,  $m + t < s < t + (m + 4a)$ . Thus,  $s = m + t + r$  for some integer  $r$  with  $1 \leq r \leq 4a - 1$ . Consequently, by adding 1 to the last  $r$  terms in the sum  $m + (m + 1) + \cdots + (m + 4a - 1)$ , we obtain the  $(4a)$ -element set

$$T = \{m, m + 1, \dots, m + 4a - r - 1\} \cup \{m + 4a - r + 1, m + 4a - r + 2, \dots, m + 4a\}$$

such that  $\sum_{x \in T} x = s$ .

It remains to show that there are  $4a$  distinct integers in  $X$  whose sum is  $s$ . Of course, if neither  $2a + 2b + 1$  nor  $2a + 2b + 3$  belongs to  $T$ , then  $T$  has the desired property. Thus, we may assume that at least one of  $2a + 2b + 1$  and  $2a + 2b + 3$  belongs to  $T$ , say  $2a + 2b + 1 \in T$ .

- ★ If  $2a + 2b + 3 \in T$  as well, then we remove  $2a + 2b + 1$  and  $2a + 2b + 3$  from  $T$  and replace them by 1 and  $4a + 4b + 3$ , obtaining the set  $T_1 \subseteq X$  such that the sum of elements in  $T_1$  is  $s$ .
- ★ If  $2a + 2b + 3 \notin T$ , then either  $2a + 2b \in T$  or  $2a + 2b + 2 \in T$ , say the former. Hence, we remove  $2a + 2b$  and  $2a + 2b + 1$  from  $T$  and replace them by 1 and  $4a + 4b$ , obtaining the set  $T_2 \subseteq X$  such that the sum of elements in  $T_2$  is  $s$ . ■

**Lemma 5.3.7** For positive integers  $a$  and  $b$  with  $a \leq b$  and the set

$$X = [4a + 4b + 4] - \{2a + 2b + 1, 2a + 2b + 3\},$$

let  $s_1 = \sum_{i=1}^{4a+2} i$  and  $s_2 = \sum_{i=1}^{4a+2} (4b + 2 + i)$ . For every integer  $s$  with  $s_1 \leq s \leq s_2$ ,

there exists a  $(4a + 2)$ -element subset  $S$  of  $X$  such that  $\sum_{x \in S} x = s$ .

**Proof.** First, we show that there exists a  $(4a + 2)$ -element subset  $S \subseteq [4a + 4b + 4]$  such that  $\sum_{x \in S} x = s$ . If  $s = s_1$  or  $s = s_2$ , then the result holds. Thus, we may assume that  $s_1 < s < s_2$ . Let  $m$  be the minimum integer in  $[4b + 2]$  such that

$$[m + (m + 1) + \cdots + (m + 4a + 1)] < s < [(m + 1) + (m + 2) + \cdots + (m + 4a + 2)].$$

Let  $t = (m + 1) + (m + 2) + \cdots + (m + 4a + 1)$ . Therefore,  $m + t < s < t + (m + 4a + 2)$ . Thus,  $s = m + t + r$  for some integer  $r$  with  $1 \leq r \leq 4a + 1$ . Consequently, by adding 1 to the last  $r$  terms in the sum  $m + (m + 1) + \cdots + (m + 4a + 1)$ , we obtain the  $(4a + 2)$ -element set

$$T = \{m, m + 1, \dots, m + 4a - r + 1\} \cup \{m + 4a - r + 3, m + 4a - r + 4, \dots, m + 4a + 2\}$$

such that  $\sum_{x \in T} x = s$ .

It remains to show that there are  $4a + 2$  distinct integers in  $X$  whose sum is  $s$ . Of course, if neither  $2a + 2b + 1$  nor  $2a + 2b + 3$  belongs to  $T$ , then  $T$  has the desired property. Thus, we may assume that at least one of  $2a + 2b + 1$  and  $2a + 2b + 3$  belongs to  $T$ , say  $2a + 2b + 1 \in T$ .

- ★ If  $2a + 2b + 3 \in T$  as well, then we remove  $2a + 2b + 1$  and  $2a + 2b + 3$  from  $T$  and replace them by 1 and  $4a + 4b + 3$ , obtaining the set  $T_1 \subseteq X$  such that the sum of elements in  $T_1$  is  $s$ .
- ★ If  $2a + 2b + 3 \notin T$ , then either  $2a + 2b \in T$  or  $2a + 2b + 2 \in T$ , say the former. Hence, we remove  $2a + 2b$  and  $2a + 2b + 1$  from  $T$  and replace them by 1 and  $4a + 4b$ , obtaining the set  $T_2 \subseteq X$  such that the sum of elements in  $T_2$  is  $s$ . ■

We are now prepared to present the following result.

**Theorem 5.3.8** *If  $a$  and  $b$  are odd integers with  $3 \leq a < b$  such that  $a \not\equiv b \pmod{4}$ , then  $\text{rm}(S_{a,b}) = a + b$ .*

**Proof.** Let  $G = S_{a,b}$ . We show that there is a rainbow mean coloring  $c : E(G) \rightarrow [a+b]$  of  $G$  with  $\text{rm}(c) = a+b$  such that  $\text{cm}(u)$  and  $\text{cm}(v)$  have certain prescribed values. We consider two cases. In each case, we let

$$A = \sum_{i=1}^{a-1} c(uu_i) = \sum_{i=1}^{a-1} \text{cm}(u_i)$$

$$B = \sum_{i=1}^{b-1} c(vv_i) = \sum_{i=1}^{b-1} \text{cm}(v_i)$$

$$x = c(uv).$$

Observe that  $A + x = \text{cm}(u) \cdot a$  and  $B + x = \text{cm}(v) \cdot b$ . Furthermore,

$$A + B + \text{cm}(u) + \text{cm}(v) = 1 + 2 + \cdots + (a+b) = \binom{a+b+1}{2}.$$

*Case 1.*  $a \equiv 3 \pmod{4}$  and  $b \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$ . Then  $a = 4j+3$  and  $b = 4k+1$  where  $0 \leq j < k$ . We show that there is a rainbow mean coloring  $c : E(G) \rightarrow [4k+4j+4]$  of  $G$  with  $\text{rm}(c) = 4j+4k+4$  such that  $\text{cm}(u) = 2k+2j+1$  and  $\text{cm}(v) = 2k+2j+3$ . For such an edge coloring  $c$  of  $G$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} A + x &= (2k + 2j + 1)(4j + 3) = 8kj + 8j^2 + 6k + 10j + 3 \\ B + x &= (2k + 2j + 3)(4k + 1) = 8kj + 8j^2 + 14k + 2j + 3 \\ A + B &= 1 + 2 + \cdots + (4k + 4j + 5) - (\text{cm}(u) + \text{cm}(v)) \\ &= (16kj + 8k^2 + 8j^2 + 18k + 18j + 10) - (4k + 4j + 4) \\ &= 16kj + 8k^2 + 8j^2 + 14k + 14j + 6. \end{aligned}$$

Hence,

$$\begin{aligned} A &= 8kj + 8j^2 + 3k + 9j + 3 \\ B &= 8kj + 8k^2 + 11k + 3j + 3 \\ x &= 3k - j. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, such an edge coloring  $c$  of  $G$  exists if there are  $4a + 2$  distinct elements in the set  $X = [4k + 4j + 4] - \{2k + 2j + 1, 2k + 2j + 3\}$  whose sum is  $A = 8kj + 8j^2 + 3k + 9j + 3$ . The sum of the  $4j+2$  smallest integers in the set  $[4k+4j+4]$  is

$$\binom{4j+3}{2} = (2j+1)(4j+3) = 8j^2 + 10j + 3;$$

while the sum of the  $4j+2$  largest integers in the set  $[4k+4j+4]$  is

$$(2j+1)(8k+4j+7) = 16kj + 8j^2 + 8k + 18j + 7.$$

Since

$$8j^2 + 10j + 3 \leq A \leq 16kj + 8j^2 + 8k + 18j + 7,$$

it follows by Lemma 5.3.7 that there is a  $(4a+2)$ -element subset  $S$  of  $X$  such that  $\sum_{x \in S} x = S$ . Observe that the sum of integers in  $X - S$  is therefore  $B$ .

*Case 2.*  $a \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$  and  $b \equiv 3 \pmod{4}$ . Then  $a = 4j+1$  and  $b = 4k+3$  where  $1 \leq j \leq k$ . We show that there is a rainbow mean coloring  $c : E(G) \rightarrow [4k+4j+4]$  of  $G$  with  $\text{rm}(c) = 4j+4k+4$  such that  $\text{cm}(u) = 2k+2j+1$  and  $\text{cm}(v) = 2k+2j+3$ . For such an edge coloring  $c$  of  $G$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} A + x &= (2k+2j+1)(4j+1) = 8kj + 8j^2 + 2k + 6j + 1 \\ B + x &= (2k+2j+3)(4k+3) = 8kj + 8j^2 + 18k + 6j + 9 \\ A + B &= 16kj + 8k^2 + 8j^2 + 14k + 14j + 6. \end{aligned}$$

Hence,

$$\begin{aligned} A &= 8kj + 8j^2 - k + 7j - 1 \\ B &= 8kj + 8k^2 + 15k + 7j + 7 \\ x &= 3k - j + 2. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, such an edge coloring  $c$  of  $G$  exists if there are  $4a$  distinct elements in the set  $X = [4k+4j+4] - \{2k+2j+1, 2k+2j+3\}$  whose sum is  $A = 8kj + 8j^2 - k + 7j - 1$ . The sum of the  $4j$  smallest integers in the set  $[4k+4j+4]$  is

$$\binom{4j+1}{2} = 2j(4j+1) = 8j^2 + 2j;$$

while the sum of the  $4j$  largest integers in the set  $[4k+4j+4]$  is

$$2j(8k+4j+9) = 16kj + 8j^2 + 18j.$$

Since  $8j^2 + 2j \leq A \leq 16kj + 8j^2 + 18j$ , it follows by Lemma 5.3.6 that there is a  $4a$ -element subset  $S$  of  $X$  such that  $\sum_{x \in S} x = A$ . Again, the sum of integers in  $X - S$  is therefore  $B$ . ■

In summary, we have the following result.

**Theorem 5.3.9** For integers  $a$  and  $b$  where  $a, b \geq 2$ ,

$$\text{rm}(S_{a,b}) = \begin{cases} a + b & \text{if } ab \text{ is even or } ab \text{ is odd and } a + b \not\equiv 2 \pmod{4} \\ a + b + 1 & \text{if } ab \text{ is odd and } a + b \equiv 2 \pmod{4}. \end{cases}$$

All trees that have been studied thus far lead us to the following conjecture.

**Conjecture 5.3.10** Let  $T$  be a tree of order  $n \geq 5$  that is not a star. Then  $\text{rm}(T) = n$  if and only if (i)  $n \not\equiv 2 \pmod{4}$  or (ii)  $n \equiv 2 \pmod{4}$  and  $T$  has at least one even vertex; while  $\text{rm}(T) = n + 1$  if  $n \equiv 2 \pmod{4}$  and all vertices of  $T$  have odd degrees.

# Chapter 6

## Proper Mean Colorings

**Abstract:** For an edge coloring of a connected graph  $G$  of order 3 or more with positive integers, the chromatic mean of a vertex  $v$  of  $G$  is the sum of the colors of the edges incident with  $v$  divided by the degree of  $v$ . Only edge colorings  $c$  are considered for which the chromatic mean of every vertex is a positive integer. If adjacent vertices have distinct chromatic means, then  $c$  is a proper mean coloring of  $G$ . The maximum vertex color in a proper mean coloring  $c$  of  $G$  is the proper mean index of  $c$  and the proper mean index  $\mu(G)$  of  $G$  is the minimum proper mean index among all proper mean colorings of  $G$ . The proper mean index is determined for complete graphs, cycles, stars, double stars, and paths. The non-leaf minimum degree  $\delta^*(T)$  of a tree  $T$  is the minimum degree among the non-leaves of  $T$ . It is shown that if  $T$  is tree with  $\delta^*(T) \geq 10$  or a caterpillar with  $\delta^*(T) \geq 6$ , then  $\mu(T) \leq 4$ . Furthermore, it is conjectured that  $\chi(G) \leq \mu(G) \leq \chi(G) + 2$  for every connected graph  $G$  of order 3 or more.

### 6.1 Introduction

First, we recall some basic definitions and notation on mean colorings of a graph. For every connected graph  $G$  of order 3 or more, there are edge colorings  $c$  with positive integers that induce a positive integer vertex coloring  $\text{cm}$  defined for each vertex  $v$  of  $G$  by

$$\text{cm}(v) = \frac{\sum_{e \in E_v} c(e)}{\deg v}, \text{ where } E_v \text{ is the set of edges incident with } v.$$

Edge colorings with this property are called *mean colorings*. The induced vertex color  $\text{cm}(v)$  of a vertex  $v$  of  $G$  is called the *chromatic mean* of  $v$ . Consequently, only edge colorings  $c$  are considered for which  $\text{cm}(v)$  is a positive integer for every vertex  $v$  of  $G$ . For a vertex  $v$  in a graph  $G$  with a mean coloring  $c$ , the *chromatic sum* of  $v$  is defined as  $\text{cs}(v) = \sum_{e \in E_v} c(e)$ . Note that  $\text{cs}(v) = \deg v \cdot \text{cm}(v)$ . Thus, the sum of the chromatic sums of all vertices in a graph satisfies the identity

$$\sum_{v \in V(G)} \text{cs}(v) = 2 \sum_{e \in E(G)} c(e).$$

Also, recall that if distinct vertices have distinct chromatic means, then the edge coloring  $c$  is called a *rainbow mean coloring* of  $G$ . It was shown that every connected graph of order 3 or more has a rainbow mean coloring. For a rainbow mean coloring  $c$  of a graph  $G$ , the maximum vertex color is the *rainbow mean index*  $\text{rm}(c)$  of  $c$ . That is,  $\text{rm}(c) = \max\{\text{cm}(v) : v \in V(G)\}$ . The *rainbow mean index*  $\text{rm}(G)$  of  $G$  itself is defined as  $\text{rm}(G) = \min\{\text{rm}(c) : c \text{ is a rainbow mean coloring of } G\}$ . We saw that if  $G$  is a connected graph of order  $n \geq 3$ , then  $\text{rm}(G) \geq n$ .

A mean coloring of a connected graph  $G$  of order 3 or more is defined to be a *proper mean coloring* of  $G$  if no two adjacent vertices in  $G$  have the same chromatic mean. The maximum vertex color in a proper mean coloring  $c$  is the *proper mean index*  $\mu(c)$  of  $c$  and the minimum proper mean index among all proper mean colorings of  $G$  is the *proper mean index*  $\mu(G)$  of  $G$ . Since every such graph has a rainbow mean coloring, each such graph has a proper mean coloring as well. In addition, the proper mean index of a graph  $G$  is at least its chromatic number  $\chi(G)$ . Thus,  $\chi(G) \leq \mu(G) \leq \text{rm}(G)$  for every connected graph  $G$  of order at least 3. As an illustration of these concepts, Figure 6.1 shows proper mean colorings of the cycles  $C_5$  and  $C_6$ . In fact,  $\mu(C_5) = 4 = \chi(C_5) + 1$  and  $\mu(C_6) = 4 = \chi(C_6) + 2$ .

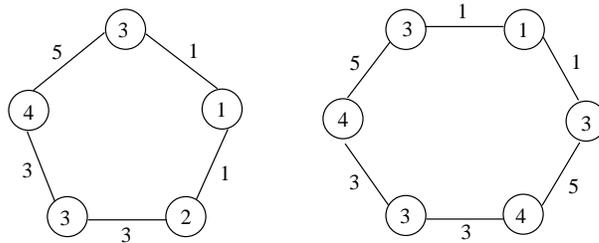


Figure 6.1: Proper mean colorings of  $C_5$  and  $C_6$

While  $\chi(G) = 2$  for every nontrivial connected bipartite graph  $G$ ,  $\mu(G) \neq \chi(G)$  for every bipartite graph  $G$ . Indeed,  $\mu(G) \neq 2$  for every connected graph  $G$  of order at least 3. In order to verify this fact, we first present a useful observation.

**Observation 6.1.1** *Let  $G$  be a connected bipartite graph with partite sets  $U$  and  $W$ . If  $c$  is an edge coloring of  $G$ , then*

$$\sum_{u \in U} \text{cs}(u) = \sum_{w \in W} \text{cs}(w).$$

**Proposition 6.1.2** *If  $G$  is a connected graph of order at least 3, then  $\mu(G) \geq 3$ . Furthermore, if  $c$  is a proper mean coloring of  $G$  with  $\mu(c) = 3$ , then*

$$\{\text{cm}(v) : v \in V(G)\} = [3].$$

**Proof.** We show that if  $c$  is a proper mean coloring of  $G$ , then the induced vertex coloring  $\text{cm}$  of  $c$  uses at least three distinct colors. Assume, to the contrary, that the chromatic mean  $\text{cm}$  obtained from  $c$  uses only two distinct colors  $a, b \in [3]$ . Then  $G$  is a connected bipartite graph. Let  $U$  and  $W$  be the partite sets of  $G$ . We may assume that  $\text{cm}(u) = a$  for each  $u \in U$  and  $\text{cm}(w) = b$  for each  $w \in W$ . Since

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{u \in U} \text{cs}(u) &= a \sum_{u \in U} \deg u = a|E(G)| \text{ and} \\ \sum_{w \in W} \text{cs}(w) &= b \sum_{w \in W} \deg w = b|E(G)|, \end{aligned}$$

it follows by Observation 6.1.1 that  $a = b$ , which is a contradiction. As a result,  $\mu(G) \geq \mu(c) \geq 3$ . Moreover, if  $\mu(c) = 3$ , then  $\text{cm}$  must use all three colors in  $[3]$ . ■

## 6.2 The Proper Mean Index of Some Well-Known Graphs

As we saw, the rainbow mean indexes of complete graphs were determined. Since  $\mu(K_n) = \text{rm}(K_n)$  for each integer  $n \geq 3$ , we have the following result.

**Theorem 6.2.1** *For an integer  $n \geq 3$ ,*

$$\mu(K_n) = \text{rm}(K_n) = \begin{cases} n & \text{if } n \geq 4 \text{ and } n \not\equiv 2 \pmod{4} \\ n + 1 & \text{if } n = 3 \text{ or } n \equiv 2 \pmod{4}. \end{cases}$$

Theorem 6.2.1 also shows that there are graphs  $G$  for which  $\mu(G) = \chi(G)$ . We now determine the proper mean index of all paths and cycles, beginning with paths.

**Theorem 6.2.2** *For each integer  $n \geq 3$ ,*

$$\mu(P_n) = \begin{cases} 3 & \text{if } n \text{ is odd} \\ 4 & \text{if } n \text{ is even.} \end{cases}$$

**Proof.** First, suppose that  $n$  is odd. By Proposition 6.1.2, it suffices to show that there is a proper mean coloring  $c$  such that  $\mu(c) = 3$ . Let  $P = (u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n)$ . For each integer  $i$  with  $1 \leq i \leq n$ , define

$$c(e) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } e \text{ is incident with } u_i \text{ for } i \equiv 1 \pmod{4} \\ 3 & \text{if } e \text{ is incident with } u_i \text{ for } i \equiv 3 \pmod{4}. \end{cases}$$

Then the vertex color  $\text{cm}(u_i)$ ,  $1 \leq i \leq n$ , is given by

$$\text{cm}(u_i) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } i \equiv 1 \pmod{4} \\ 2 & \text{if } i \equiv 0, 2 \pmod{4} \\ 3 & \text{if } i \equiv 3 \pmod{4}. \end{cases}$$

This edge coloring is illustrated in Figure 6.2 for  $P_n$  when  $n = 3, 5, 7$ . Since  $\text{cm}$  is a proper coloring of  $P_n$ , it follows that  $\mu(c) = 3$ . Thus,  $\mu(P_n) = 3$  for every odd integer  $n \geq 3$ .

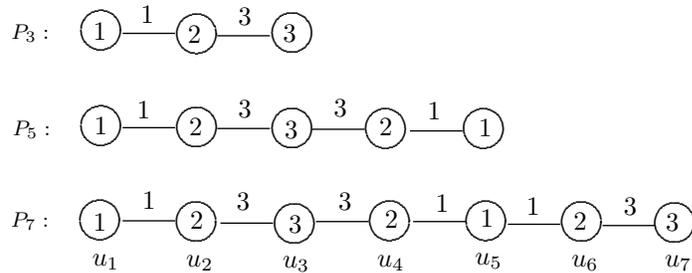


Figure 6.2: Proper mean colorings of  $P_n$  for  $n = 3, 5, 7$

Next, suppose that  $n$  is even. We show that  $\mu(P_n) = 4$ . First, we show that  $\mu(P_n) \geq 4$ . Assume, to the contrary, that there is a proper mean coloring  $c$  of  $P_n$

with  $\mu(c) = 3$ . By Proposition 6.1.2, there is a vertex  $v$  in  $P_n$  such that  $\text{cm}(v) = 1$ . Hence, each edge incident with  $v$  is colored 1, which implies that  $c(e)$  is odd for all  $e \in E(P_n)$ . Suppose that there is an edge  $e$  such that  $c(e) = 5$ . If  $e$  is a pendant edge of  $P_n$ , then  $\mu(c) \geq 5$ , which is a contradiction. Thus, we may assume that  $e$  is adjacent to two edges  $e_1$  and  $e_2$  of  $P_n$ . Since  $c(e_1) \neq c(e_2)$  and  $c(e_1)$  and  $c(e_2)$  are both odd, at least one of  $c(e_1)$  and  $c(e_2)$  is 3 or more. However then,  $\text{cm}(u) \geq 4$  for at least one vertex  $u$  incident with  $e$ , which is a contradiction. Thus, all edges are colored 1 or 3. We may assume, without loss of generality, that  $c(u_1u_2) = 1$ . This implies that  $c(e) = 1$  if  $e$  is incident with  $u_i$  where  $i \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$  and  $c(e) = 3$  if  $e$  is incident with  $u_i$  where  $i \equiv 3 \pmod{4}$ . Since  $n \geq 4$  is even, it follows that  $\text{cm}(u_{n-1}) = \text{cm}(u_n) \in \{1, 3\}$ , which is a contradiction. Hence,  $\mu(P_n) \geq 4$ .

To verify that  $\mu(P_n) \leq 4$ , it remains to show that there is a proper mean coloring  $c$  with  $\mu(c) = 4$  for each even integer  $n \geq 4$ . For the path  $P_{n-1} = (v_1, v_2, v_3, \dots, v_{n-1})$ , where  $n-1 \geq 3$  is odd, let  $c_0$  be the proper mean coloring of  $P_{n-1}$  with  $\mu(c_0) = 3$  defined in Case 1. Subdividing the edge  $v_2v_3$  of  $P_{n-1}$ , we obtain the path  $P_n = (v_1, v_2, w, v_3, \dots, v_{n-1})$  of order  $n$ . Now, define the edge coloring  $c$  of  $P_n$  by  $c(v_2w) = 5$ ,  $c(wv_3) = 3$ , and  $c(e) = c_0(e)$  if  $e$  is not incident with  $w$ . If we denote  $P_n$  by  $(u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n)$ , then the vertex color  $\text{cm}(u_i)$ ,  $1 \leq i \leq n$ , is given by

$$\text{cm}(u_i) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } i = 1 \text{ or } i \equiv 2 \pmod{4} \text{ for } i \neq 2 \\ 2 & \text{if } i \equiv 1, 3 \pmod{4} \text{ for } 5 \leq i \leq n-1 \\ 3 & \text{if } i = 2 \text{ or } i \equiv 0 \pmod{4} \\ 4 & \text{if } i = 3. \end{cases}$$

This edge coloring is illustrated in Figure 6.3 for  $P_n$  when  $n = 4, 6, 8$ . Since  $\text{cm}$  is a proper coloring of  $P_n$ , it follows that  $\mu(c) = 4$ . Therefore,  $\mu(P_n) = 4$  for each even integer  $n \geq 4$ . ■

**Theorem 6.2.3** *For each integer  $n \geq 4$ ,*

$$\mu(C_n) = \begin{cases} 3 & \text{if } n \equiv 0 \pmod{4} \\ 4 & \text{if } n \not\equiv 0 \pmod{4}. \end{cases}$$

**Proof.** Let  $C_n = (u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n, u_{n+1} = u_1)$  be a cycle of order  $n \geq 3$ , where  $e_i = u_iu_{i+1}$  for  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . First, suppose that  $n \geq 4$  and  $n \equiv 0 \pmod{4}$ . By

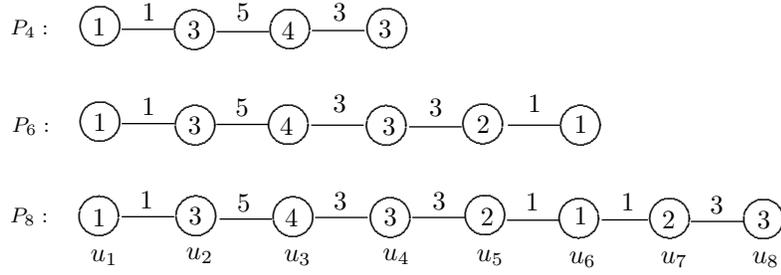


Figure 6.3: Proper mean colorings of  $P_n$  for  $n = 4, 6, 8$

Proposition 6.1.2, it suffices to show that there exists a proper mean coloring  $c$  with  $\mu(c) = 3$ . Define the edge coloring  $c$  by

$$c(e) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } e \text{ is incident with } u_i \text{ where } i \equiv 2 \pmod{4} \\ 3 & \text{if } e \text{ is incident with } u_i \text{ where } i \equiv 0 \pmod{4}. \end{cases} \quad (6.1)$$

Then the vertex color  $\text{cm}(u_i)$ ,  $1 \leq i \leq n$ , is given by

$$\text{cm}(u_i) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } i \equiv 2 \pmod{4} \\ 2 & \text{if } i \text{ is odd} \\ 3 & \text{if } i \equiv 0 \pmod{4}. \end{cases}$$

Since the vertex coloring  $\text{cm}$  is proper, it follows that  $\mu(c) = 3$  and so  $\mu(C_n) = 3$  if  $n \equiv 0 \pmod{4}$ .

Next, suppose that  $n \not\equiv 0 \pmod{4}$ . First, we show that  $\mu(C_n) \geq 4$ . Assume, to the contrary, that there exists a proper mean coloring  $c$  of  $C_n$  with  $\mu(c) = 3$ . By Proposition 6.1.2, there is a vertex  $v$  such that  $\text{cm}(v) = 1$ . Hence, each edge incident with  $v$  of  $C_n$  is colored 1, which implies that  $c(e)$  is odd for all  $e \in E(C_n)$ . First, suppose that there is an edge  $e$  such that  $c(e) = 5$ . Let  $e_1$  and  $e_2$  be the two edges adjacent to  $e$ . Since  $c(e_1) \neq c(e_2)$  and  $c(e_1)$  and  $c(e_2)$  are both odd, at least one of  $c(e_1)$  and  $c(e_2)$  is 3 or more. However then,  $\text{cm}(u) \geq 4$  for at least one vertex  $u$  incident with  $e$ , which is a contradiction. Hence, we may assume that each edge of  $C_n$  is colored 1 or 3. Since the resulting vertex coloring  $\text{cm}$  is proper, no edge is adjacent to two edges having the same color. Without loss of generality, we may conclude that the edges incident with  $u_i$  with  $i \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$  are colored 1 and the edges incident with  $u_i$  with  $i \equiv 3 \pmod{4}$  are colored 3. This, in turn, implies that  $n \equiv 0 \pmod{4}$ , a contradiction.

It remains then to show that there is a proper mean coloring  $c$  of  $C_n$  with  $\mu(c) = 4$ . We consider three cases.

*Case 1.*  $n \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$ . Then  $n - 1 \equiv 0 \pmod{4}$  and so  $\mu(C_{n-1}) = 3$ . Let  $c_0$  be the proper mean coloring of  $C_{n-1} = (u_1, u_2, \dots, u_{n-1}, u_1)$  defined in (6.1) with  $\mu(c_0) = 3$ . Now, let  $C_n$  be obtained from  $C_{n-1}$  by subdividing the edge  $u_{n-1}u_1$  with the vertex  $u_n$ . We now extend the coloring  $c_0$  to a proper mean coloring  $c$  of  $C_n$  by defining  $c(u_{n-1}u_n) = 3$  and  $c(u_nu_1) = 5$ . This is illustrated in Figure 6.4 for  $n = 5, 9$ .

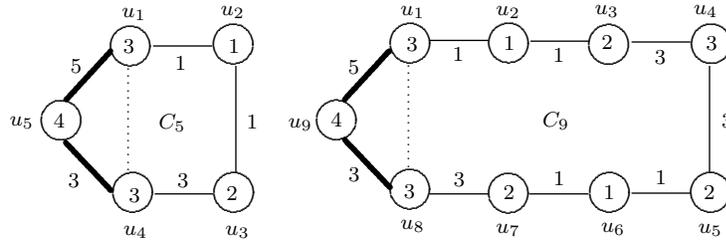


Figure 6.4: Proper mean colorings of  $C_5$  and  $C_9$

*Case 2.*  $n \equiv 2 \pmod{4}$ . Then  $n - 1 \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$ . Let  $c_1$  be the proper mean coloring of  $C_{n-1} = (u_1, u_2, \dots, u_{n-1}, u_1)$  defined in Case 1 and let  $C_n$  be obtained from  $C_{n-1}$  by subdividing the edge  $u_{n-2}u_{n-3}$  with the vertex  $w$ . We now extend the coloring  $c_1$  to a proper mean coloring  $c$  of  $C_n$  with  $\mu(c) = 4$  by defining  $c(u_{n-2}w) = 3$  and  $c(wu_{n-3}) = 5$ . This is illustrated in Figure 6.5 for  $n = 10$ .

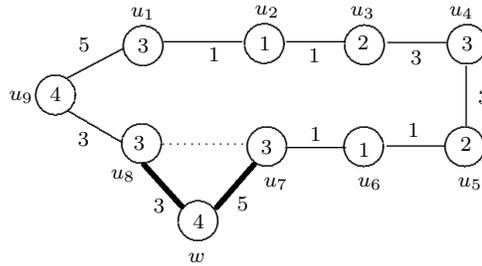


Figure 6.5: A proper mean coloring of  $C_{10}$

*Case 3:*  $n \equiv 3 \pmod{4}$ . Then  $n - 3 \equiv 0 \pmod{4}$  and so  $\mu(C_{n-3}) = 3$ . Let  $c_0$  be the proper mean coloring of  $C_{n-3} = (u_1, u_2, \dots, u_{n-3}, u_1)$  defined in (6.1) with  $\mu(c_0) = 3$ . Now, let  $C_n$  be obtained from  $C_{n-3}$  by replacing the edge  $u_1u_{n-3}$  (a 2-path) by the 5-path  $(u_1, u_n, u_{n-1}, u_{n-2}, u_{n-3})$ . We now extend the coloring  $c_0$  to a

proper mean coloring  $c$  of  $C_n$  with  $\mu(c) = 4$  by defining  $c(u_1u_n) = 3$ ,  $c(u_nu_{n-1}) = 5$ ,  $c(u_{n-1}u_{n-2}) = 1$  and  $c(u_{n-2}u_{n-3}) = 3$ . This is illustrated in Figure 6.6 for  $n = 11$ . ■

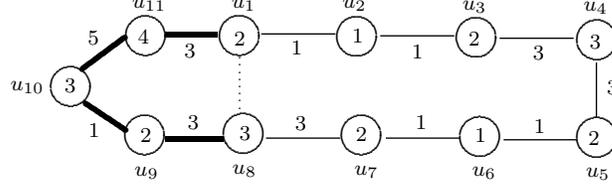


Figure 6.6: A proper mean coloring of  $C_{11}$

Next, we determine the proper mean index of all complete bipartite graphs.

**Theorem 6.2.4** For positive integers  $s$  and  $t$  with  $s + t \geq 3$ ,

$$\mu(K_{s,t}) = \begin{cases} 3 & \text{if } st \text{ is even} \\ 4 & \text{if } st \text{ is odd.} \end{cases}$$

**Proof.** Let  $G = K_{s,t}$  with partite sets  $U = \{u_1, u_2, \dots, u_s\}$  and  $W = \{w_1, w_2, \dots, w_t\}$ . First, suppose that  $st$  is even. We may assume that  $s$  is even. Then  $s = 2a$  for some positive integer  $a$ . By Proposition 6.1.2, it suffices to show that there is a proper mean coloring  $c : E(G) \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  such that  $\mu(c) = 3$ . For each  $w \in W$ , define

$$c(u_iw) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } 1 \leq i \leq a \\ 3 & \text{if } a + 1 \leq i \leq 2a. \end{cases}$$

Then  $\text{cm}(u_i) = 1$  for  $1 \leq i \leq a$ ,  $\text{cm}(u_i) = 3$  for  $a + 1 \leq i \leq 2a$ , and  $\text{cm}(w) = 2$  for each  $w \in W$ . Since  $\text{cm}$  is a proper coloring of  $G$ , it follows that  $\mu(c) = 3$ . This implies that  $\mu(G) = 3$  if  $st$  is even.

Next, suppose that  $st$  is odd. We may assume that  $1 \leq s \leq t$ . Then  $s = 2a + 1$  and  $t = 2b + 1$  for some integers  $a$  and  $b$  with  $0 \leq a \leq b$  and  $b \geq 1$ . First, we show that there is a proper mean coloring  $c$  of  $G$  with  $\mu(c) = 4$ . If  $a = 0$ , then define

$$c(u_1w_i) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } 1 \leq i \leq b + 1 \\ 3 & \text{if } b + 2 \leq i \leq 2b \\ 4 & \text{if } i = 2b + 1. \end{cases}$$

Then  $\text{cm}(u_1) = 2$ ,  $\text{cm}(w_i) = 1$  for  $1 \leq i \leq b + 1$ ,  $\text{cm}(w_i) = 3$  for  $b + 2 \leq i \leq 2b$ , and  $\text{cm}(w_{2b}) = 4$ . If  $a = 1$ , then define

$$c(u_i w) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } i = 1, 2 \\ 4 & \text{if } i = 3. \end{cases}$$

Then  $\text{cm}(u_1) = \text{cm}(u_2) = 1$ ,  $\text{cm}(u_3) = 4$ , and  $\text{cm}(w) = 2$  for each  $w \in W$ . If  $a \geq 2$ , then define

$$c(u_i w) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } 1 \leq i \leq a + 1 \\ 3 & \text{if } a + 2 \leq i \leq 2a \\ 4 & \text{if } i = 2a + 1. \end{cases}$$

Then  $\text{cm}(u_i) = 1$  for  $1 \leq i \leq a + 1$ ,  $\text{cm}(u_i) = 3$  for  $a + 2 \leq i \leq 2a$ ,  $\text{cm}(u_{2a+1}) = 4$ , and  $\text{cm}(w) = 2$  for each  $w \in W$ . Therefore,  $\mu(G) \leq 4$ .

It remains to show that  $\mu(G) \neq 3$ . Assume, to the contrary, that there is a proper mean coloring  $c$  of  $G$  with  $\mu(G) = 3$ . Thus,  $\{\text{cm}(v) : v \in V(G)\} = \{1, 2, 3\}$  by Observation 6.1.2. First, suppose that  $s = 1$ . Since  $\text{cm}(u_1) \neq 1$ , it follows that  $\text{cm}(u_1) = 2$  or  $\text{cm}(u_1) = 3$ .

★ First, suppose that  $\text{cm}(u_1) = 2$ . Thus,  $\text{cm}(w) \in \{1, 3\}$  for each  $w \in W$ . Let  $x$  be the number of the vertices  $w \in W$  such that  $\text{cm}(w) = 1$ . Then there are  $2b + 1 - x$  vertices  $w \in W$  such that  $\text{cm}(w) = 3$ . By Observation 6.1.1,

$$x \cdot 1 + (2b + 1 - x) \cdot 3 = 2(2b + 1).$$

However then,  $2x = 2b + 1$ , which is impossible.

★ Next, suppose that  $\text{cm}(u_1) = 3$ . Thus,  $\text{cm}(w) \in \{1, 2\}$  for each  $w \in W$ . Let  $x$  be the number of the vertices  $w \in W$  such that  $\text{cm}(w) = 1$ . Then there are  $2b + 1 - x$  vertices  $w \in W$  such that  $\text{cm}(w) = 2$ . By Observation 6.1.1,

$$x \cdot 1 + (2b + 1 - x) \cdot 2 = 3(2b + 1).$$

However then,  $2b + 1 + x = 0$ , which is impossible.

Next, suppose that  $s \geq 3$ . We may assume that  $\text{cm}(u_1) = 1$  (as the argument for  $\text{cm}(w_1) = 1$  is similar). Hence, there is  $u \in U$  such that  $\text{cm}(u) \neq 1$ ; if this were not the case, then  $c(e) = 1$  for every edge  $e$  of  $G$  and so  $\text{cm}(v) = 1$  for every vertex  $v$  of  $G$ . Since  $G$  is a complete bipartite graph, it follows that  $\text{cm}(u) \neq \text{cm}(w)$  for every  $u \in U$  and  $w \in W$ . Thus, either  $\{\text{cm}(u) : u \in U\} = \{1, 2\}$  or  $\{\text{cm}(u) : u \in U\} = \{1, 3\}$ .

- ★ If  $\{\text{cm}(u) : u \in U\} = \{1, 2\}$ , then  $\text{cm}(w) = 3$  for each  $w \in W$ . Let  $x$  be the number of the vertices  $u \in U$  such that  $\text{cm}(u) = 1$ . Then there are  $2a + 1 - x$  vertices  $u \in U$  such that  $\text{cm}(u) = 2$ . By Observation 6.1.1,

$$x(2b + 1) \cdot 1 + (2a + 1 - x)(2b + 1) \cdot 2 = (2b + 1)(2a + 1) \cdot 3.$$

However then,  $2a + x + 1 = 0$ , which is impossible.

- ★ If  $\{\text{cm}(u) : u \in U\} = \{1, 3\}$ , then  $\text{cm}(w) = 2$  for each  $w \in W$ . Let  $x$  be the number of vertices  $u \in U$  such that  $\text{cm}(u) = 1$ . Then there are  $2a + 1 - x$  vertices  $u \in U$  such that  $\text{cm}(u) = 3$ . By Observation 6.1.1,

$$x(2b + 1) \cdot 1 + (2a + 1 - x)(2b + 1) \cdot 3 = (2b + 1)(2a + 1) \cdot 2.$$

However then,  $2a + 1 = 2x$ , which is impossible. ■

In each of the examples we've seen, the proper mean index of a graph has not exceeded its chromatic number by more than 2. This leads to the following conjecture.

**Conjecture 6.2.5** *For every connected graph  $G$  of order 3 or more,*

$$\chi(G) \leq \mu(G) \leq \chi(G) + 2.$$

## 6.3 Trees

In the case of trees, Conjecture 6.2.5 states that  $\mu(T) \leq 4$  for every tree  $T$  of order at least 3. We thus turn our attention to investigate this conjecture for various classes of trees. By Theorems 6.2.2 and 6.2.4, Conjecture 6.2.5 is true for paths and stars. We now show that if the edges of a nontrivial star are subdivided *in any manner*, then the proper mean index of the resulting tree is at most 4. In order to verify this fact, we first present a lemma.

**Lemma 6.3.1** *If  $P_n$  is a path of order  $n \geq 3$ , then there is a proper mean coloring  $c$  of  $P_n$  such that  $\mu(c) \leq 4$  and the chromatic mean of an end-vertex of  $P_n$  is 3.*

**Proof.** Let  $G = P_n = (v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n)$ . We consider two cases based on the parity of  $n$ .

*Case 1.  $n$  is odd.* We handle the cases of  $n \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$  and  $n \equiv 3 \pmod{4}$  separately.

*Subcase 1.1.  $n \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$ .* We may assume that  $n \geq 5$ . Notice that  $|E(G)| \equiv 0 \pmod{4}$ . Let a proper mean coloring  $c : E(P_n) \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  be given by the color sequence

$$\mathcal{S}_c(P_n) = (3, 1, 1, 3, 3, 1, 1, 3, \dots, 3, 1, 1, 3).$$

The vertex coloring  $\text{cm}$  induced by  $c$  is given by the sequence

$$\mathcal{S}_{\text{cm}}(P_n) = (3, 2, 1, 2, 3, 2, 1, 2, 3, \dots, 2, 1, 2, 3).$$

It follows that  $\mu(c) = 3$  and so  $\text{cm}(v_1) = 3$ .

*Subcase 1.2.  $n \equiv 3 \pmod{4}$ .* We may assume that  $n \geq 3$ . Notice that  $|E(G)| \equiv 2 \pmod{4}$ . Let a proper mean coloring  $c : E(P_n) \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  be given by the color sequence

$$\mathcal{S}_c(P_n) = (3, 1, 1, 3, 3, 1, 1, 3, 3, 1, \dots, 1, 3, 3, 1).$$

The vertex coloring  $\text{cm}$  induced by  $c$  is given by the sequence

$$\mathcal{S}_{\text{cm}}(P_n) = (3, 2, 1, 2, 3, 2, 1, 2, 3, 2, 1, \dots, 2, 3, 2, 1).$$

It follows that  $\mu(c) = 3$  and so  $\text{cm}(v_1) = 3$ .

*Case 2.  $n$  is even.* We handle the cases of  $n \equiv 0 \pmod{4}$  and  $n \equiv 2 \pmod{4}$  separately.

*Subcase 2.1.  $n \equiv 0 \pmod{4}$ .* We may assume that  $n \geq 4$ . Notice that  $|E(G)| \equiv 3 \pmod{4}$ . Let a proper mean coloring  $c : E(P_n) \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  be given by the color sequence

$$\mathcal{S}_c(P_n) = (3, 5, 1, 1, 3, 3, 1, 1, 3, 3, 1, \dots, 1, 3, 3, 1).$$

The vertex coloring  $\text{cm}$  induced by  $c$  is given by the sequence

$$\mathcal{S}_{\text{cm}}(P_n) = (3, 4, 3, 1, 2, 3, 2, 1, \dots, 2, 3, 2, 1).$$

It follows that  $\mu(c) = 4$  and so  $\text{cm}(v_1) = 3$ .

*Subcase 2.2.*  $n \equiv 2 \pmod{4}$ . We may assume that  $n \geq 6$ . Notice that  $|E(G)| \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$ . Let a proper mean coloring  $c : E(P_n) \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  be given by the color sequence

$$\mathcal{S}_c(P_n) = (3, 5, 1, 1, 3, 3, 1, 1, 3, \dots, 3, 1, 1, 3).$$

The vertex coloring  $\text{cm}$  induced by  $c$  is given by the sequence

$$\mathcal{S}_{\text{cm}}(P_n) = (3, 4, 3, 1, 2, 3, 2, 1, 2, 3, \dots, 2, 1, 2, 3).$$

It follows that  $\mu(c) = 4$  and so  $\text{cm}(v_1) = 3$ . ■

**Theorem 6.3.2** *If  $T$  is a subdivided nontrivial star, then  $\mu(T) \leq 4$ .*

**Proof.** Let  $T$  be the tree obtained from the star  $K_{1,t}$  by subdividing at least one edge of  $K_{1,t}$ . Since the proper mean index of every path of order 3 or more is at most 4, we may assume that  $t \geq 3$ . Suppose, in constructing the tree  $T$ , that  $r$  edges of  $K_{1,t}$  are subdivided and  $s$  edges of  $K_{1,t}$  are not subdivided, where then  $r \geq 1$ ,  $s \geq 0$ , and  $r + s = t$ . We show that there is a proper mean coloring  $c$  of  $T$  with  $\text{cm}(c) \leq 4$ .

Let  $v$  be the central vertex of  $K_{1,t}$ , let  $U = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_r\}$  be the set of vertices adjacent to  $v$  with degree at least 2 in  $T$ , and let  $W = \{w_1, w_2, \dots, w_s\}$  be the set of end-vertices adjacent to  $v$  in  $T$ . We consider two cases.

*Case 1.  $s$  is even.* Then define a proper mean coloring  $c : E(T) \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  by  $c(vv_i) = 2$  if  $i$  is even,  $c(vv_i) = 4$  if  $i$  is odd, and color each subpath of  $T$  starting at  $v$  with order at least 3 using the coloring defined in Lemma 6.3.1, with  $c(vv_i) = 3$  for all  $i$  where  $1 \leq i \leq r$ . It follows that  $\text{cm}(v) = 3$  and  $\text{cm}(w_i) \in \{2, 4\}$ , which implies that  $\text{cm}$  is a proper  $k$ -coloring of  $T$  where  $k \leq 4$  and so  $\mu(c) \leq 4$ .

*Case 2.  $s$  is odd.* We consider the case of  $s = 1$  separately.

*Subcase 2.1.  $s = 1$ .* Then define a proper mean coloring  $c : E(T) \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  as follows. First let  $c(vw_1) = 1$ . Consider a subpath starting at  $v$  with order at least 3, say the subpath containing  $v_1$ . Let  $c(vv_1) = 5$ . If the path has odd order, let  $c(v_1v_2) = 3$ . Then iteratively color the remaining edges of the path by

alternating between the color sequences (3, 1) and (1, 3). If the path has even order, iteratively color the remaining edges starting with  $e = v_1v_2$  by alternating between the color sequences (3, 1) and (1, 3). Color the edges of any remaining subpaths using the coloring described in Lemma 6.3.1 so that  $c(vv_i) = 3$  for  $2 \leq i \leq r$ . Then  $\text{cm}(v) = 3$ ,  $\text{cm}(w_1) = 1$ ,  $\text{cm}(v_1) = 4$ , and each subpath starting at  $v$  is colored properly by  $\text{cm}$ . It follows that  $\text{cm}$  is a proper  $k$ -coloring of  $T$  where  $k \leq 4$ , implying that  $\mu(c) \leq 4$ .

*Subcase 2.2.*  $s \geq 3$ . Then define a proper mean coloring  $c : E(T) \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  by  $c(vw_2) = 1$ ,  $c(vw_i) = 4$  if  $i$  is odd, and  $c(vw_i) = 2$  if  $i$  is even for  $i \geq 4$ , and color each subpath of  $T$  starting at  $v$  with order at least 3 using the coloring defined in Lemma 6.3.1, with  $c(vv_i) = 3$  for all  $i$  where  $1 \leq i \leq r$ . It follows that  $\text{cm}(v) = 3$  and  $\text{cm}(w_i) \in \{1, 2, 4\}$ , which implies that  $\text{cm}$  is a proper  $k$ -coloring of  $T$  where  $k \leq 4$  and so  $\mu(c) \leq 4$ . ■

By Theorems 6.2.2, 6.2.4, and 6.3.2, Conjecture 6.2.5 is true for all trees having at most one vertex of degree greater than 2. We now show that Conjecture 6.2.5 is true as well for trees all of whose non-leaves have sufficiently large degree. The *non-leaf minimum degree*  $\delta^*(T)$  of a tree  $T$  of order 3 or more is the minimum degree among the non-leaves of  $T$ .

**Lemma 6.3.3** *Let  $x$  be a vertex in a tree  $T$  such that  $\deg x \geq 10$ .*

- (a) *There exists a coloring of the edges of  $T$  incident with  $x$  using colors from [4] such that  $\text{cm}(x) = 2$ , where (i) exactly one edge incident with  $x$  is colored 2 or (ii) no edges incident with  $x$  are colored 2.*
- (b) *There exists a coloring of the edges of  $T$  incident with  $x$  using colors from [4] such that  $\text{cm}(x) = 3$ , where (i) exactly one edge incident with  $x$  is colored 3 or (ii) no edges incident with  $x$  are colored 3.*

**Proof.** We begin with (a). First, suppose that  $x$  has even degree. Then  $\deg x = 10 + 2k$  where  $k \geq 0$ . For (i), we color  $k + 5$  edges incident with  $x$  by 1, one edge by 2,  $k + 3$  edges by 3, and one edge by 4. For (ii), we color  $k + 6$  edges incident with  $x$  by 1,  $k + 2$  edges by 3, and two edges by 4. If (i) occurs, then  $x$  is referred to as a *Type 2.1 vertex*, while if (ii) occurs, then  $x$  is referred to as a *Type 2.2 vertex*. It is convenient to represent these colorings of the edges incident with  $x$  as follows:

$$\text{Type 2.1: } \begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|} \hline k+5 & 1 & k+3 & 1 \\ \hline 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ \hline \end{array} \quad \text{Type 2.2: } \begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|} \hline k+6 & 0 & k+2 & 2 \\ \hline 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ \hline \end{array}.$$

Now suppose that  $x$  has odd degree. Then  $\deg x = 11 + 2k$  where  $k \geq 0$ . The following colorings of the edges incident with  $x$  have the desired properties (i) or (ii). Here, the vertex  $x$  is referred to as a *Type 2.3 vertex* if (i) occurs or as a *Type 2.4 vertex* if (ii) occurs.

$$\text{Type 2.3: } \begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|} \hline k+6 & 1 & k+2 & 2 \\ \hline 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ \hline \end{array} \quad \text{Type 2.4: } \begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|} \hline k+6 & 0 & k+4 & 1 \\ \hline 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ \hline \end{array}.$$

Next, we verify (b). First, suppose that  $x$  has even degree. Then  $\deg x = 10 + 2k$  where  $k \geq 0$ . The following colorings of the edges incident with  $x$  have the desired properties (i) or (ii) and the vertex  $x$  is referred to as a *Type 3.1 vertex* if (i) occurs or as a *Type 3.2 vertex* if (ii) occurs.

$$\text{Type 3.1: } \begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|} \hline 1 & k+3 & 1 & k+5 \\ \hline 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ \hline \end{array} \quad \text{Type 3.2: } \begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|} \hline 2 & k+2 & 0 & k+6 \\ \hline 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ \hline \end{array}.$$

Next, suppose that  $x$  has odd degree. Then  $\deg x = 11 + 2k$  where  $k \geq 0$ . The following colorings of the edges incident with  $x$  have the desired properties (i) or (ii). Similarly, the vertex  $x$  is called a *Type 3.3 vertex* if (i) occurs or a *Type 3.4 vertex* if (ii) occurs.

$$\text{Type 3.3: } \begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|} \hline 2 & k+2 & 1 & k+6 \\ \hline 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ \hline \end{array} \quad \text{Type 3.4: } \begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|} \hline 1 & k+4 & 0 & k+6 \\ \hline 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ \hline \end{array}.$$

Therefore, (a) and (b) both hold. ■

**Theorem 6.3.4** *If  $T$  is a tree with  $\delta^*(T) \geq 10$ , then  $\mu(T) \leq 4$ .*

**Proof.** By Theorem 6.2.4, the statement is true if  $T$  is a star. Hence, we may assume that  $T$  is not a star. Let  $v$  be a vertex of  $T$  that is not a leaf. Thus,  $\deg v = d \geq 10$ . Let  $T$  be a tree rooted at  $v$ , where  $V_i = \{u \in V(T) : d(u, v) = i\}$  for  $i = 0, 1, \dots, e(v)$ , where  $e(v)$  is the eccentricity of  $v$ . Hence,  $V_0 = \{v\}$ ,  $V_1 =$

$N(v)$ , and  $V_i \neq \emptyset$  for  $0 \leq i \leq e(v)$ . Furthermore, for each vertex  $x \in V_i$ , where  $1 \leq i \leq e(v)$ , there is exactly one vertex  $y \in V_{i-1}$  such that  $xy \in E(T)$ . Next, we construct a proper mean coloring  $c$  of  $T$  recursively such that  $\mu(c) = 4$ .

Let  $V_1 = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_d\}$ . Since  $T$  is not a star, at least one vertex of  $V_1$  has degree 10 or more. By Lemma 6.3.3, we can color the edges incident with  $v$  so that  $v$  is a Type 2.2 vertex if  $v$  has even degree or a Type 2.4 vertex if  $v$  has odd degree. Thus,  $\text{cm}(v) = 2$  and no edge incident with  $v$  is colored 2. Hence, if  $v_i \in V_1$ ,  $1 \leq i \leq d$ , is a leaf, then  $\text{cm}(v_i) \neq 2$ . On the other hand, one or more vertices in  $V_1$  has degree 10 or more. Let  $v_j \in V_1$ ,  $1 \leq j \leq d$ , such that  $\deg v_j \geq 10$ . Then  $c(vv_j) \in \{1, 3, 4\}$ . If  $c(vv_j) \in \{1, 4\}$ , then we color the edges incident with  $v_j$  so that  $v_j$  is a Type 3.2 vertex if  $\deg v_j$  is even or color these edges so that  $v_j$  is a Type 3.4 vertex if  $\deg v_j$  is odd. If  $c(vv_j) = 3$ , then we color the edges incident with  $v_j$  so that  $v_j$  is a Type 3.1 vertex if  $\deg v_j$  is even or color these edges so that  $v_j$  is a Type 3.3 vertex if  $\deg v_j$  is odd. In either case,  $\text{cm}(v_j) = 3$  and for any leaf  $x$  (necessarily in  $V_2$ ) adjacent to  $v_j$ , it follows that  $\text{cm}(x) \neq 3$ . We perform such a coloring for each vertex  $v_j \in V_1$  of degree 10 or more such that  $\text{cm}(v_j) = 3$  where no edge joining  $v_j$  and a vertex in  $V_2$  is colored 3.

Next, suppose that  $y$  is a vertex in  $V_2$  such that  $\deg y \geq 10$ . Let  $x$  be the vertex of  $V_1$  such that  $xy \in E(T)$ . Then  $c(xy) \in \{1, 2, 4\}$ . If  $c(xy) \in \{1, 4\}$ , then we color the remaining  $\deg y - 1$  edges incident with  $y$  so that  $y$  is a Type 2.2 vertex if  $\deg y$  is even or color these edges so that  $y$  is a Type 2.4 vertex if  $\deg y$  is odd. If  $c(xy) = 2$ , then we color the remaining  $\deg y - 1$  edges incident with  $y$  so that  $y$  is a Type 2.1 vertex if  $\deg y$  is even or color these edges so that  $y$  is a Type 2.3 vertex if  $\deg y$  is odd. In either case,  $\text{cm}(y) = 2$  and  $\text{cm}(z) \neq 2$  for all leaves  $z \in V_3$  adjacent to  $y$ . We perform such a coloring for each vertex  $y \in V_2$  of degree 10 or more such that  $\text{cm}(y) = 2$  where no edge joining  $y$  and a vertex in  $V_3$  is colored 2.

Proceeding in this manner for each vertex  $x$  in  $V_i$  for  $3 \leq i \leq e(v) - 1$  with  $\deg x \geq 10$ , we arrive at a proper mean coloring  $c$  of  $T$  with  $\mu(c) = 4$ . Therefore,  $\mu(T) \leq 4$ . ■

If the tree  $T$  being considered is a caterpillar (the removal of all leaves produces a path, called the *spine* of  $T$ ), then a result similar to Theorem 6.3.4 can be obtained with a weaker hypothesis. Once again, we begin with a lemma.

**Lemma 6.3.5** *Let  $x$  be a vertex in a caterpillar  $T$  such that  $\deg x \geq 6$ .*

- (a) *There exists a coloring of the edges of  $T$  incident with  $x$  with colors from  $[4]$  such that  $\text{cm}(x) = 2$ , where (i) exactly one edge incident with  $x$  is colored 2 or (ii) exactly two edges incident with  $x$  are colored 2.*
- (b) *There exists a coloring of the edges of  $T$  incident with  $x$  with colors from  $[4]$  for which  $\text{cm}(x) = 3$  such that no edges incident with  $x$  are colored 3.*

**Proof.** We begin with (a). First, suppose that  $x$  has even degree. Then  $\deg x = 6 + 2k$  where  $k \geq 0$ . For (i), we color  $k + 3$  edges incident with  $x$  by 1, one edge by 2,  $k + 1$  edges by 3, and one edge by 4. For (ii), we color  $k + 2$  edges incident with  $x$  by 1, two edges by 2, and  $k + 2$  edges by 3. If (i) occurs, then  $x$  is referred to as a *Type 2a vertex*; while if (ii) occurs, then  $x$  is referred to as a *Type 2b vertex*.

$$\text{Type 2a: } \begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|} \hline k+3 & 1 & k+1 & 1 \\ \hline 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ \hline \end{array} \quad \text{Type 2b: } \begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|} \hline k+2 & 2 & k+2 & 0 \\ \hline 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ \hline \end{array}.$$

Next, suppose that  $x$  has odd degree. Then  $\deg x = 7 + 2k$  where  $k \geq 0$ . The following colorings of the edges incident with  $x$  have the desired properties (i) or (ii). Here, the vertex  $x$  is referred to as a *Type 2c vertex* if (i) occurs or as a *Type 2d vertex* if (ii) occurs.

$$\text{Type 2c: } \begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|} \hline k+3 & 1 & k+3 & 0 \\ \hline 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ \hline \end{array} \quad \text{Type 2d: } \begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|} \hline k+3 & 2 & k+1 & 1 \\ \hline 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ \hline \end{array}.$$

Next, we verify (b). If  $x$  has even degree, then  $\deg x = 6 + 2k$  where  $k \geq 0$ . The following coloring of the edges incident with  $x$  (labeled Type 3a) has the desired properties and the vertex  $x$  is referred to as a *Type 3a vertex*. If  $x$  has odd degree, then  $\deg x = 7 + 2k$  where  $k \geq 0$ . The following coloring of the edges incident with  $x$  (labeled Type 3b) has the desired properties and the vertex  $x$  is referred to as a *Type 3b vertex*.

$$\text{Type 3a: } \begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|} \hline 0 & k+3 & 0 & k+3 \\ \hline 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ \hline \end{array} \quad \text{Type 3b: } \begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|} \hline 1 & k+2 & 0 & k+4 \\ \hline 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ \hline \end{array}.$$

Therefore, (a) and (b) hold. ■

**Theorem 6.3.6** *If  $T$  is a caterpillar with  $\delta^*(T) \geq 6$ , then  $\mu(T) \leq 4$ .*

**Proof.** Let  $(v_1, v_2, \dots, v_d)$  be the spine of  $T$ . Since the statement is true if  $T$  is a star, we may assume that  $d \geq 2$ . With the aid of Lemma 6.3.5, we construct a proper mean coloring  $c$  of  $T$  such that  $\mu(c) = 4$ .

First, we color the edges incident with  $v_1$  so that  $v_1$  is a Type 2a vertex if  $v_1$  has even degree or a Type 2c vertex if  $v_1$  has odd degree where  $v_1v_2$  is colored 2. Thus,  $\text{cm}(v_1) = 2$  and no leaf incident with  $v_1$  is colored 2. Next, we color the remaining  $\deg v_2 - 1$  edges incident with  $v_2$  so that  $v_2$  is a Type 3a vertex if  $\deg v_2$  is even or color these edges so that  $v_2$  is a Type 3b vertex if  $\deg v_2$  is odd. If  $d \geq 3$ , then  $v_2v_3$  is colored 2. Thus,  $\text{cm}(v_2) = 3$  and no leaf incident with  $v_2$  is colored 3.

We now proceed to  $v_3$  if  $d \geq 3$ . First, suppose that  $d = 3$ . Since  $c(v_2v_3) = 2$  and  $v_3$  is adjacent to  $\deg v_3 - 1$  leaves, we color the edges incident with  $v_3$  so that  $v_3$  is a Type 2a vertex if  $v_3$  has even degree or a Type 2c vertex if  $v_3$  has odd degree. Thus,  $\text{cm}(v_3) = 2$  and no leaf incident with  $v_3$  is colored 2. Next, suppose that  $d \geq 4$ . We color the remaining  $\deg v_3 - 1$  edges incident with  $v_3$  so that  $v_3$  is a Type 2b vertex if  $v_3$  has even degree or a Type 2d vertex if  $v_3$  has odd degree. If  $d \geq 4$ , then  $v_3v_4$  is colored 2. Thus,  $\text{cm}(v_3) = 2$  and no leaf incident with  $v_3$  is colored 2.

We now proceed to  $v_4$  if  $d \geq 4$ . Since  $c(v_3v_4) = 2$  and  $\text{cm}(v_3) = 2$ , we color the remaining  $\deg v_4 - 1$  edges incident with  $v_4$  so that  $v_4$  is a Type 3a vertex if  $\deg v_4$  is even or color these edges so that  $v_4$  is a Type 3b vertex if  $\deg v_4$  is odd so that  $\text{cm}(v_4) = 3$  and no leaf incident with  $v_4$  is colored 3. Furthermore, if  $d \geq 5$ , we color the edge  $v_4v_5$  by 2.

In general, if  $i$  is odd and  $5 \leq i \leq d$ , then we color the remaining  $\deg v_i - 1$  edges incident  $v_i$  in the same manner as the coloring of the edges incident with  $v_3$ ; while if  $i$  is even and  $6 \leq i \leq d$ , then we color the remaining  $\deg v_i - 1$  edges incident  $v_i$  in the same manner as the coloring of the edges incident with  $v_4$ . Proceeding in this manner, we arrive at a proper mean coloring  $c$  of  $T$  with  $\mu(c) = 4$ . Therefore,  $\mu(T) \leq 4$ . ■

If the caterpillar  $T$  being considered has small diameter, then it can be shown that  $\mu(T) \leq 4$  regardless of the non-leaf minimum degree of  $T$ .

**Theorem 6.3.7** *If  $T$  is a caterpillar of diameter 4, then  $\mu(T) \leq 4$ .*

**Proof.** Let  $T$  be a caterpillar of diameter 4 whose spine is  $(u, v, w)$ . We may assume that  $2 \leq \deg u \leq \deg w$ . We consider two cases, according to the parities of the degrees of  $u$  and  $w$ .

*Case 1. Both  $\deg u$  and  $\deg w$  are odd.* First, suppose that  $T$  is one of the trees  $T'$  and  $T''$  shown in Figure 6.7. Since each of  $T'$  and  $T''$  has a proper mean coloring with proper mean index 3 (as shown in Figure 6.7), it follows that  $\mu(T) = 3$  if  $T \in \{T', T''\}$ . Next, suppose that  $T \notin \{T', T''\}$ . Then  $T$  contains either  $T'$  or  $T''$  as a subtree. We show that the proper mean coloring of  $T'$  or of  $T''$  in Figure 6.7 can be extended to a proper mean coloring  $c$  of  $T$  such that  $\mu(c) = 3$ .

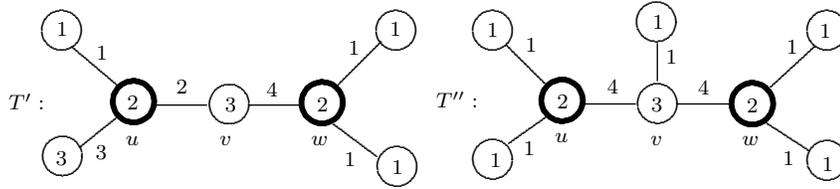


Figure 6.7: Proper mean colorings of  $T'$  and  $T''$

- ★ If  $\deg v \geq 4$  is even, say  $\deg v = 2 + 2k$  for some positive integer  $k$ , then we begin with the coloring of  $T'$  and color each of the additional  $k$  pairs of pendant edges at  $v$  by 2 and 4. If  $\deg v \geq 5$  is odd, say  $\deg v = 3 + 2k$  for some positive integer  $k$ , then we begin with the coloring of  $T''$  and color each of the additional  $k$  pairs of pendant edges at  $v$  by 2 and 4.
- ★ If  $\deg u \geq 5$  or  $\deg w \geq 5$ , say  $\deg u = 3 + 2\ell$  for some positive integer  $\ell$ , then we begin with the coloring of  $T'$  (if  $\deg v$  is even) or the coloring of  $T''$  (if  $\deg v$  is odd) and color each of the additional  $\ell$  pairs of pendant edges at  $u$  by 1 and 3.

Since the resulting coloring  $c$  of  $T$  is a proper mean coloring with  $\mu(c) = 3$ , it follows that  $\mu(T) = 3$  if both  $\deg u$  and  $\deg w$  are odd.

*Case 2. At least one of  $\deg u$  and  $\deg w$  is even, say  $\deg u$  is even.* There are two subcases, according to whether  $\deg u = 2$  or  $\deg u \geq 4$ .

*Subcase 2.1.  $\deg u = 2$ .* First, suppose that  $T$  is one of the seven caterpillars  $T_1, T_2, \dots, T_7$  of diameter 4 shown in Figure 6.8. Since each of these seven caterpillars has a proper mean coloring with proper mean index at most 4 (as shown in Figure 6.8), it follows that  $\mu(T_i) \leq 4$  for  $1 \leq i \leq 7$ .

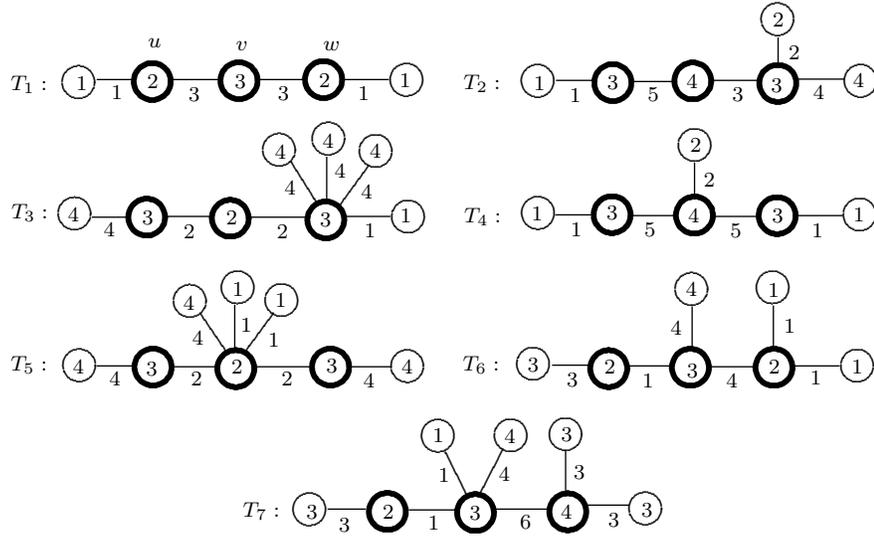


Figure 6.8: Proper mean colorings of  $T_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq 7$

Next, suppose that  $T \neq T_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq 7$ . Then  $T$  contains  $T_i$  as a subtree for some  $i \in [7]$ . We show that the proper mean coloring  $c_i$  of  $T_i$  in Figure 6.8 can be extended to a proper mean coloring  $c$  of  $T$  such that  $\mu(c) = \mu(c_i)$ .

- ★ Suppose that  $\deg v$  and  $\deg w$  are both even. Then  $\deg v = 2 + 2k$  and  $\deg w = 2 + 2\ell$  for some nonnegative integers  $k$  and  $\ell$ . Since  $T \neq T_1$ , it follows that  $\max\{k, \ell\} \geq 1$ . Beginning with the coloring of  $T_1$ , we color each of the additional  $k$  pairs of pendant edges at  $v$  (not in  $T_1$ ) by 2 and 4 and color each of the additional  $\ell$  pairs of pendant edges at  $w$  (not in  $T_1$ ) by 1 and 3.
- ★ Suppose that  $\deg v$  and  $\deg w$  are both odd. Then  $\deg v = 3 + 2k$  and  $\deg w = 3 + 2\ell$  for some nonnegative integers  $k$  and  $\ell$  with  $\max\{k, \ell\} \geq 1$  (since  $T \neq T_6$ ). Beginning with the coloring of  $T_6$ , we color each of the additional  $k$  pairs of pendant edges at  $v$  (not in  $T_6$ ) by 2 and 4 and color each of the additional  $\ell$  pairs of pendant edges at  $w$  (not in  $T_6$ ) by 1 and 3.
- ★ Suppose that  $\deg v$  is even and  $\deg w$  is odd. Then  $\deg v = 2 + 2k$  and  $\deg w = 3 + 2\ell$ , where  $k \geq 1$  and  $\ell \geq 0$ . If  $\ell = 0$ , then we may assume that  $k \geq 2$  (since  $T \neq T_2, T_7$ ). Beginning with the coloring of  $T_7$ , we color each of the additional  $k - 1$  pairs of pendant edges at  $v$  (not in  $T_7$ ) by 2 and 4. If  $\ell \geq 1$ , then we begin with the coloring of  $T_3$ , color each of the additional

$k$  pairs of pendant edges at  $v$  (not in  $T_3$ ) by 1 and 3, and color each of the additional  $\ell - 1$  pairs of pendant edges at  $w$  (not in  $T_3$ ) by 2 and 4.

- ★ Suppose that  $\deg v$  is odd and  $\deg w$  is even. Then  $\deg v = 3 + 2k$  and  $\deg w = 2 + 2\ell$  where  $k, \ell \geq 0$ . If  $k = 0$ , then we may assume that  $\ell \geq 1$  (since  $T \neq T_4$ ). Beginning with the coloring of  $T_4$ , we color each of the additional  $\ell$  pairs of pendant edges at  $w$  (not in  $T_4$ ) by 2 and 4. If  $k \geq 1$ , then we begin with the coloring of  $T_5$ , color each of the additional  $k - 1$  pairs of pendant edges at  $v$  (not in  $T_5$ ) by 1 and 3, and color each of the additional  $\ell$  pairs of pendant edges at  $w$  (not in  $T_5$ ) by 2 and 4.

In each situation, the resulting coloring  $c$  is a proper mean coloring of  $T$  with  $\mu(c) \leq 4$ .

*Subcase 1.2.  $\deg u \geq 4$  is even.* Let  $\deg u = 2 + 2p$  for some positive integer  $p$ . Then  $T$  is obtained from a caterpillar  $T_0$  of diameter 4 of Subcase 2.1 by adding  $2p$  pendant edges at  $u$ . We begin with the coloring  $c_0$  of  $T_0$  as described in Subcase 2.1. Then  $\text{cm}_{c_0}(u) \in \{2, 3\}$ . If  $\text{cm}_{c_0}(u) = 2$ , then we color each of the additional  $p$  pairs of the pendant edges at  $u$  (not in  $T_0$ ) by 1 and 3; while if  $\text{cm}_{c_0}(u) = 3$ , then we color each of the additional  $p$  pairs of the pendant edges at  $u$  (not in  $T_0$ ) by 2 and 4. In each case, the resulting coloring  $c$  is a proper mean coloring of  $T$  with  $\text{cm}(c) = \text{cm}(c_0) \leq 4$ . ■

For caterpillar of diameter 3 (that is double stars), the proper mean index has been determined exactly.

**Theorem 6.3.8** *If  $a$  and  $b$  are integers with  $2 \leq a \leq b$ , then*

$$\mu(S_{a,b}) = \begin{cases} 3 & \text{if } a \neq b \\ 4 & \text{if } a = b. \end{cases}$$

**Proof.** Let  $G = S_{a,b}$  where  $2 \leq a \leq b$ . Suppose that  $u$  and  $v$  are the central vertices of  $G$  with  $\deg u = a$  and  $\deg v = b$  where  $u$  is adjacent to the  $a - 1$  end-vertices  $u_1, u_2, \dots, u_{a-1}$  and  $v$  is adjacent to the  $b - 1$  end-vertices  $v_1, v_2, \dots, v_{b-1}$ . First assume  $a \neq b$ . It suffices to show that there exists a proper mean coloring  $c$  of  $S_{a,b}$  with  $\mu(c) = 3$ . Since  $a - 1 < b - 1$ , there exist integers  $q$  and  $r$  such that  $b - 1 = q(a - 1) + r$  where  $0 \leq r < a - 1$  and  $q \geq 1$ . We consider two cases.

*Case 1.  $q$  is odd.* We handle the case of  $q = 1$  separately.

*Subcase 1.1.  $q = 1$ .* Since  $a \neq b$  it follows that  $r > 0$ . Partition the end-vertices adjacent to  $u$  into sets  $U_1 = \{u_1, u_2, \dots, u_r\}$  and  $U_2 = \{u_{r+1}, u_{r+2}, \dots, u_{a-1}\}$  and partition the end-vertices adjacent to  $v$  into sets  $V_1 = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_r\}$ ,  $V_2 = \{v_{r+1}, v_{r+2}, \dots, v_{a-1}\}$ , and  $V_3 = \{v_a, \dots, v_{b-1}\}$ . Since  $r > 0$ ,  $U_1$  is nonempty. Define  $c : E(G) \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  by

$$c(e) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } e = uw \text{ for } w \in U_1 - \{u_1\} \text{ and } w \in V_i, \text{ for } i \in [3] \\ 2 & \text{if } e = uw \text{ for } w \in U_2 \text{ and } w = u_1 \\ a + r + 1 & \text{if } e = uv. \end{cases}$$

Then  $\text{cm}(u) = 3$ ,  $\text{cm}(v) = 2$ ,  $\text{cm}(u_i) \in \{1, 2\}$  for  $1 \leq i \leq a - 1$ , and  $\text{cm}(v_i) = 1$  for  $1 \leq i \leq b - 1$ . Since  $\text{cm}$  is a proper coloring of  $G$ , it follows that  $\mu(c) = 3$ .

*Subcase 1.2.  $q \geq 3$ .* Let  $q = 2k + 1$ . Partition the end-vertices adjacent to  $u$  into sets  $U_1 = \{u_1, u_2, \dots, u_r\}$  and  $U_2 = \{u_{r+1}, u_{r+2}, \dots, u_{a-1}\}$  and partition the end-vertices adjacent to  $v$  into  $q$  sets  $V_1, V_2, \dots, V_q$  each containing  $a - 1$  end-vertices and  $W$  containing  $r$  end-vertices. Let  $x \in V_2$  and let  $y \in U_2$ . Define  $c : E(G) \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  by

$$c(e) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } e = uw \text{ for } w \in \{x, y\}, w \in U_1, w \in W, \text{ and } w \in V_i \text{ for odd } i \\ 2 & \text{if } e = uw \text{ for } w \in U_2 \text{ with } w \neq y \\ 3 & \text{if } e = uw \text{ for } w \in V_i \text{ for even } i \text{ with } w \neq x \\ a + r + 3 & \text{if } e = uv. \end{cases}$$

Then  $\text{cm}(u) = 3$ ,  $\text{cm}(v) = 2$ ,  $\text{cm}(u_i) \in \{1, 2\}$  for  $1 \leq i \leq a - 1$ , and  $\text{cm}(v_i) \in \{1, 3\}$  for  $1 \leq i \leq b - 1$ . Since  $\text{cm}$  is a proper coloring of  $G$ , it follows that  $\mu(c) = 3$ .

*Case 2.  $q$  is even.* Let  $q = 2k$  with  $k \geq 1$ . Partition the end-vertices adjacent to  $u$  into sets  $U_1 = \{u_1, u_2, \dots, u_r\}$  and  $U_2 = \{u_{r+1}, u_{r+2}, \dots, u_{a-1}\}$  and partition the end-vertices adjacent to  $v$  into  $q$  sets  $V_1, V_2, \dots, V_q$  each containing  $a - 1$  end-vertices and  $W$  containing  $r$  end-vertices. Let  $x \in U_2$ . Define  $c : E(G) \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  by

$$c(e) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } e = uw \text{ for } w \in U_2 - \{x\} \text{ or } w \in V_i \text{ for } i \in \{1, 2\} \text{ or odd } i \text{ with } i \geq 3 \\ 2 & \text{if } e = uw \text{ for } w = x \text{ or } w \in U_1 \\ 3 & \text{if } e = uw \text{ for } w \in W \text{ or } w \in V_i \text{ for even } i \text{ with } i \geq 2 \\ 2a - r & \text{if } e = uv. \end{cases}$$

Then  $\text{cm}(u) = 3$ ,  $\text{cm}(v) = 2$ ,  $\text{cm}(u_i) \in \{1, 2\}$  for  $1 \leq i \leq a-1$ , and  $\text{cm}(v_i) \in \{1, 3\}$  for  $1 \leq i \leq b-1$ . Since  $\text{cm}$  is a proper coloring of  $G$ , it follows that  $\mu(c) = 3$ .

Next, assume that  $a = b$ . First, we show  $\mu(G) \geq 4$ . Assume, to the contrary, that there exists a proper mean coloring  $c : V(G) \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  of  $G$  with  $\mu(c) = 3$ . Since  $\text{cm}(u) \geq 2$  and  $\text{cm}(v) \geq 2$ , we may assume that  $\text{cm}(u) = 3$  and  $\text{cm}(v) = 2$ . Let  $A = \sum_{i=1}^{a-1} c(u_i)$  and  $B = \sum_{i=1}^{a-1} c(v_i)$ . Since  $\text{cm}$  is proper,  $c(u_i) \leq 2$  for all  $i$  with  $1 \leq i \leq a-1$ . Note that  $c(v_i) \geq 1$  for all  $i$  with  $1 \leq i \leq a-1$ . Observe that

$$3a = A + c(uv) \leq 2(a-1) + c(uv)$$

and

$$2a = B + c(uv) \geq (a-1) + c(uv).$$

It follows that  $a+2 \leq c(uv) \leq a+1$ , which is impossible.

Next we exhibit a proper mean coloring  $c$  of  $G$  with  $\mu(c) = 4$ . We consider two cases.

*Case 1.  $a$  is even.* Then  $b = a = 2k$  for some positive integer  $k$ . We may assume that  $k \geq 2$ . Define  $c : E(G) \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  by

$$c(e) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } e = uu_1 \text{ or } e = vv_i \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq k \\ 2 & \text{if } e = uu_i \text{ for } 2 \leq i \leq k-1 \text{ when } k \geq 3 \\ 3 & \text{if } e = uv \text{ or } e = vv_i \text{ for } k+1 \leq i \leq 2k-1 \\ 4 & \text{if } e = uu_i \text{ for } k \leq i \leq 2k-1. \end{cases}$$

Then  $\text{cm}(u) = 3$ ,  $\text{cm}(v) = 2$ ,  $\text{cm}(u_i) \in \{1, 2, 4\}$  for  $1 \leq i \leq a-1$ , and  $\text{cm}(v_i) \in \{1, 3\}$  for  $1 \leq i \leq a-1$ . Since  $\text{cm}$  is a proper coloring of  $G$ , it follows that  $\mu(c) = 4$ .

*Case 2.  $a$  is odd.* Then  $b = a = 2k+1$  for some positive integer  $k$ . We may assume that  $k \geq 1$ . Define  $c : E(G) \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  by

$$c(e) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } e = uv \text{ or } e = vv_i \text{ for } 2 \leq i \leq k+1 \\ 2 & \text{if } e = uu_i \text{ for } k+2 \leq i \leq 2k \text{ when } k \geq 2 \\ 3 & \text{if } e = vv_i \text{ for } k+2 \leq i \leq 2k \text{ when } k \geq 2 \\ 4 & \text{if } e = vv_1 \text{ or } e = uu_i \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq k+1. \end{cases}$$

Then  $\text{cm}(u) = 3$ ,  $\text{cm}(v) = 2$ ,  $\text{cm}(u_i) \in \{2, 4\}$  for  $1 \leq i \leq a-1$ , and  $\text{cm}(v_i) \in \{1, 3, 4\}$  for  $1 \leq i \leq a-1$ . Since  $\text{cm}$  is a proper coloring of  $G$ , it follows that  $\mu(c) = 4$ . ■

# Bibliography

- [1] L. Addario-Berry, R. E. L. Aldred, K. Dalal and B. A. Reed, Vertex colouring edge partitions. *J. Combin. Theory Ser. B* **94** (2005) 237-244.
- [2] M. Aigner and E. Triesch, Irregular assignments and two problems á la Ringel. *Topics in Combinatorics and Graph Theory*. (R. Bodendiek and R. Henn, eds.). Physica, Heidelberg (1990) 29–36.
- [3] M. Aigner and E. Triesch, Irregular assignments of trees and forests, *SIAM J. Discrete Math.* **3** (1990) 439–449.
- [4] M. Aigner, E. Triesch and Z. Tuza, Irregular assignments and vertex-distinguishing edge-colorings of graphs. *Combinatorics' 90* Elsevier Science Pub., New York (1992) 1-9.
- [5] C. Bazgan, A. Harkat-Benhamdine, H. Li and M. Woźniak, On the vertex-distinguishing proper edge-colorings of graphs. *J. Combin. Theory Ser. B.* **75** (1999) 288-301.
- [6] Jean-Luc Baril and O. Togni, Neighbor-distinguishing  $k$ -tuple edge-colorings of graphs *Discrete Math.* **309** (2009), 5147-5157
- [7] Z. Bi, S. English, I. Hart and P. Zhang, Majestic colorings of graphs. *J. Combin. Math. Combin. Comput.* **102** (2017) 123-140.
- [8] N. Bousquet, A. Dailly, E. Duchêne, H. Kheddouci, and A. Parreau, A Vizing-like theorem for union vertex-distinguishing edge coloring. *Discrete Appl. Math.* **232** (2017) 88-98.
- [9] R. L. Brooks, On coloring the nodes of a network. *Proc. Cambridge Philos. Soc.* **37** (1941), 194–197.

- [10] A. C. Burris, On graphs with irregular coloring number 2. *Congr. Numer.* **100** (1994), 129–140.
- [11] A. C. Burris, The irregular coloring number of a tree. *Discrete Math.* **141** (1995), 279–283.
- [12] A. C. Burris and R. H. Schelp, Vertex-distinguishing proper edge colorings. *J. Graph Theory.* **26** (1997) 73-82.
- [13] J. Černý, M. Hornák and R. Soták, Observability of a graph. *Math. Slovaca* **46** (1996) 21-31.
- [14] G. Chartrand, Highly Irregular in *Graph Theory-Favorite Conjectures and Open Problems* (ed. by R. Gera, S. Hedetniemi, and C. Larson). Springer, New York (2016).
- [15] G. Chartrand, C. Egan, and P. Zhang, *How to Label a Graph*. Springer, New York (2019).
- [16] G. Chartrand, P. Erdős, and O. R. Oellermann, How to define an irregular graph. *College Math. J.* **19** (1988), 36–42.
- [17] G. Chartrand, J. Hallas, and P. Zhang, Royal colorings of graphs. *Ars. Combin.* To appear.
- [18] A. Ali, G. Chartrand, J. Hallas, and P. Zhang, Extremal Problems in Royal Colorings of Graphs. arXiv:1909.12690 [math.CO].
- [19] G. Chartrand, J. Hallas, E. Salehi, and P. Zhang, Rainbow Mean Colorings of Graphs. *Discrete Mathematics Letters.* **2** (2019), 18–25.
- [20] G. Chartrand, J. Hallas, and P. Zhang, Proper Mean Colorings of Graphs. *Discrete Mathematics Letters.* To appear.
- [21] G. Chartrand, M. S. Jacobson, J. Lehel, O. R. Oellermann, S. Ruiz, and F. Saba, Irregular networks. *Congr. Numer.* **64** (1988), 197–210.
- [22] G. Chartrand, L. Lesniak and P. Zhang, *Graphs & Digraphs: 6th Edition*, Chapman & Hall/CRC, Boca Raton, FL (2015).

- [23] G. Chartrand and P. Zhang, *Chromatic Graph Theory*. Second Edition. Chapman & Hall/CRC Press, Boca Raton (2020).
- [24] G. Chartrand and P. Zhang, *A First Course in Graph Theory*, Dover, New York (2012).
- [25] O. Favaron, H. Li and R. H. Schelp, Strong edge colorings of graphs. *Discrete Math.* **159** (1996) 103-109.
- [26] J. A. Gallian, A dynamic survey of graph labeling. *Electron. J. Combin.* **16** (2009) #DS6.
- [27] E. Györi, M. Horňák, C. Palmer and M. Woźniak, General neighbour-distinguishing index of a graph. *Discrete Math.* **308** (2008) 827-831.
- [28] F. Harary, *Graph Theory*. Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA (1969).
- [29] F. Harary and M. Plantholt, The point-distinguishing chromatic index. *Graphs and Applications*. Wiley, New York (1985) 147-162.
- [30] I. Hart, *Induced Graph Colorings*. Doctoral Dissertation. Western Michigan University (2018).
- [31] J. E. Hopcroft and M. S. Krishnamoorthy, On the harmonious coloring of graphs. *SIAM J. Algebraic Discrete Methods* **4** (1983), 306–311.
- [32] M. Horňák and R. Soták, Observability of complete multipartite graphs with equipotent parts. *Ars Combin.* **41** (1995) 289-301.
- [33] M. Horňák and R. Soták, Asymptotic behaviour of the observability of  $Q_n$ . *Discrete Math.* **176** (1997) 139-148.
- [34] M. Horňák, R. Soták, C. Palmer and M. Woźniak, General neighbour-distinguishing index of a graph. *Discrete Math.* **308** (2008) 827-831.
- [35] M. Horňák and R. Soták, General neighbour-distinguishing index via chromatic number. *Discrete Math.* **310** (2010) 1733-1736.
- [36] M. Kalkowski, M. Karoński, and F. Pfender, Vertex-coloring edge-weightings: Towards the 1-2-3 Conjecture. *J. Combin. Theory Ser. B.* **100** (2010), 347–349.

- [37] T. Meagher, Multi-coloring and Mycielski's construction (2010)
- [38] M. Karoński, T. Łuczak, and A. Thomason, Edge weights and vertex colours. *J. Combin. Theory Ser. B* **91** (2004), 151–157.
- [39] J. Przybyło and M. Woźniak, On a 1, 2 Conjecture, *Discrete Math. Theor. Comput. Sci.* **12** (2010) 101–108.
- [40] S. Poljak and F. S. Roberts, An application of Stahl's conjecture about the  $k$ -tuple chromatic numbers of Kneser graphs. *The mathematics of preference, choice and order*, Stud. Choice Welf., Springer, Berlin, (2009) 345-352.
- [41] J. Rieder On  $k$ -Tuple-Colorings of Graphs, Technical Report , 16 p. (1986)
- [42] S. Stahl  $n$ -Tuple colorings and associated graphs. *J. Combin. Theory, Series B* **20** (1976), 185-203
- [43] V. G. Vizing, On an estimate of the chromatic class of a  $p$ -graph. (Russian) *Diskret. Analiz.* **3** (1964) 25-30.
- [44] D. Wells, Which is the most beautiful? *Math. Intelligencer* **10** (1988), 30–31.
- [45] P. Zhang, *Color-Induced Graph Colorings*. Springer, New York (2015).
- [46] P. Zhang, *A Kaleidoscopic View of Graph Colorings*. Springer, New York (2016).
- [47] Z. Zhang, L. Liu and J. Wang, Adjacent strong edge coloring of graphs. *Appl. Math. Lett.* **15** (2002) 623-626.